

OPC Unified Architecture

for

MTConnect[®]

Companion Specification

Release Candidate 2.0RC8

February 19, 2019

Specification Type:	Industry Standard Specification	Comments:	
Title:	OPC Unified Architecture for MT-Connect	Date:	February 19, 2019
Version:	2.0RC8	Software:	LaTeX
Authors:	William Sobel, Randy Armstrong, John Turner, Russell Waddell, Shaurabh Singh	Source:	OPC_UA_MTConnect_2.0RC8.pdf
Owner:	MTConnect Institute	Status:	Release Candidate

Document History

Version	Date	Reason	Comments	Mantis
2.00 RC8	2019-02-18	Revision	Added list of tables	4631
2.00 RC8	2019-02-18	Revision	Added table for reset triggers and suggested status codes	4630
2.00 RC8	2019-02-18	Revision	Removed data rate issue from page 77	4629
2.00 RC7	2019-02-12	Revision	2.0 RC6: 8.4.6.2 MTConnect Condition Branching Example – Need to improve documentation of condition branching	4608
2.00 RC7	2019-02-12	Revision	Document 2.0 RC 6: 8.4.7 Messages – need to improve message handling	4607
2.00 RC7	2019-02-12	Node Ids	List of NodeIds as CSV	4612
2.00 RC7	2019-02-12	Revision	A chapter for Profiles and Namespaces needs to be added	4611
2.00.06	2019-01-22	Revision	Added missing class types and made MTMessageType a Variable instead of an Event	
2.00.05	2018-12-09	Revision	Fixed Composition	
2.00.04	2018-11-30	Initial	Initial Release Candidate	

Contents

1	Scope	1
2	OPC Unified Architecture for MTConnect Companion Specification Goals	2
3	Who Will Find Benefit from this Companion Specification?	3
4	Normative References	3
4.1	OPC UA References	3
4.2	MTConnect References	4
4.3	Other References	4
5	Terms, Definitions and Conventions	4
5.1	Overview	5
5.2	Conventions	5
5.3	Terms and Acronyms	5
5.3.1	Conventions for Node descriptions	5
5.3.2	NodeIds and BrowseNames	7
5.3.3	Common Attributes	8
6	Introduction to MTConnect and OPC UA	11
6.1	MTConnect	11
6.1.1	Data Dictionary	12
6.1.2	Semantic Data Models	12
6.1.3	Fundamentals of MTConnect	13
6.2	Introduction to OPC Unified Architecture	14
6.2.1	Basics of OPC UA	15
6.2.2	Information Modeling in OPC UA	16
7	Use Cases	21
7.1	Machine Tool Manufacturer with Existing MTConnect Implementation . .	22
7.2	Software Vendor	23
7.3	Data Scientist	24
7.4	Industrial Systems Integrator	25
8	Mapping the MTConnect Information Model to OPC UA	26
8.1	MTConnect UML Representation of OPC	26
8.1.1	MTConnect UML Model	29
8.2	MTConnect Information Model	30
8.3	Mapping The Model	31
8.3.1	Mapping Rules and Conventions	31
8.3.2	Component and Composition BrowseName and <i>Type</i> Rules	33
8.3.3	DataItem HasTypeDefinition and BrowseName Conventions	34
8.3.4	Mapping MTDataItem units to EngineeringUnits	37
8.3.5	Mapping Example	39

8.4	MTConnect Streaming Data	58
8.4.1	MTConnectStreams Document Header	59
8.4.2	MTConnectStreams Device and Component Stream	59
8.4.3	Samples	60
8.4.4	String and Numeric Events	61
8.4.5	Controlled Vocabulary Events	61
8.4.6	Conditions	62
8.4.7	Messages	67
8.5	Time Series Samples	68
9	MTConnect OPC UA Types	71
9.1	Components	71
9.1.1	Defintion of MTChannelType	71
9.1.2	Defintion of MTComponentType	72
9.1.3	Defintion of MTDeviceType	75
9.1.4	Defintion of MTCompositionType	75
9.1.5	Defintion of MTConfigurationType	76
9.1.6	Defintion of MTSensorConfigurationType	76
9.1.7	Defintion of MTDescriptionType	77
9.2	Component Types	77
9.2.1	Defintion of ActuatorType	78
9.2.2	Defintion of AuxiliariesType	78
9.2.3	Defintion of BarFeederType	79
9.2.4	Defintion of EnvironmentalType	79
9.2.5	Defintion of LoaderType	79
9.2.6	Defintion of SensorType	80
9.2.7	Defintion of ToolingDeliveryType	80
9.2.8	Defintion of WasteDisposalType	80
9.2.9	Defintion of AxesType	81
9.2.10	Defintion of LinearType	81
9.2.11	Defintion of RotaryType	81
9.2.12	Defintion of ChuckType	82
9.2.13	Defintion of ControllerType	82
9.2.14	Defintion of PathType	82
9.2.15	Defintion of DoorType	83
9.2.16	Defintion of InterfacesType	83
9.2.17	Defintion of BarFeederInterfaceType	83
9.2.18	Defintion of ChuckInterfaceType	84
9.2.19	Defintion of DoorInterfaceType	84
9.2.20	Defintion of MaterialHandlerInterfaceType	84
9.2.21	Defintion of ResourcesType	85
9.2.22	Defintion of MaterialsType	85
9.2.23	Defintion of StockType	85
9.2.24	Defintion of PersonnelType	86
9.2.25	Defintion of SystemsType	86

9.2.26	Defintion of CoolantType	87
9.2.27	Defintion of DielectricType	87
9.2.28	Defintion of ElectricType	87
9.2.29	Defintion of EnclosureType	87
9.2.30	Defintion of FeederType	88
9.2.31	Defintion of HydraulicType	88
9.2.32	Defintion of LubricationType	88
9.2.33	Defintion of PneumaticType	89
9.2.34	Defintion of ProcessPowerType	89
9.2.35	Defintion of ProtectiveType	89
9.3	Data Items	90
9.3.1	Defintion of AssetEventDataTypes	91
9.3.2	Defintion of MTAssetEventType	91
9.3.3	Defintion of MTConditionClassType	92
9.3.4	Defintion of MTConstraintType	93
9.3.5	Defintion of MTControlledVocabEventType	93
9.3.6	Defintion of «mixin» MTDataItemType	94
9.3.7	Defintion of «mixin» MTNumericDataItemType	97
9.3.8	Defintion of MTEventClassType	99
9.3.9	Defintion of MTMessageEventType	100
9.3.10	Defintion of MTMessageType	100
9.3.11	Defintion of MTNumericEventType	101
9.3.12	Defintion of MTSampleType	103
9.3.13	Defintion of MTStringEventType	105
9.3.14	Defintion of MTThreeSpaceSampleType	106
9.3.15	Defintion of MessageDataType	108
9.3.16	Defintion of ThreeSpaceSampleDataType	108
9.4	Conditions	108
9.4.1	Defintion of MTConditionType	110
9.5	Data Item Types	112
9.5.1	Defintion of MTDataItemClassType	112
9.5.2	Defintion of MTMessageClassType	113
9.6	Sample Data Item Types	113
9.6.1	Defintion of MTSampleClassType	113
9.6.2	Defintion of LoadClassType	116
9.6.3	Defintion of AccelerationClassType	116
9.6.4	Defintion of AccumulatedTimeClassType	116
9.6.5	Defintion of AngularAccelerationClassType	116
9.6.6	Defintion of AngularVelocityClassType	117
9.6.7	Defintion of AmperageClassType	117
9.6.8	Defintion of AngleClassType	117
9.6.9	Defintion of AxisFeedrateClassType	118
9.6.10	Defintion of ClockTimeClassType	118
9.6.11	Defintion of ConcentrationClassType	118
9.6.12	Defintion of ConductivityClassType	119

9.6.13	Defintion of	DisplacementClassType	119
9.6.14	Defintion of	ElectricalEnergyClassType	119
9.6.15	Defintion of	EquipmentTimerClassType	120
9.6.16	Defintion of	FillLevelClassType	120
9.6.17	Defintion of	FlowClassType	120
9.6.18	Defintion of	FrequencyClassType	121
9.6.19	Defintion of	LengthClassType	121
9.6.20	Defintion of	LinearForceClassType	121
9.6.21	Defintion of	MassClassType	122
9.6.22	Defintion of	PathFeedrateClassType	122
9.6.23	Defintion of	PathPositionClassType	122
9.6.24	Defintion of	PHClassType	123
9.6.25	Defintion of	PositionClassType	123
9.6.26	Defintion of	PowerFactorClassType	124
9.6.27	Defintion of	PressureClassType	124
9.6.28	Defintion of	ProcessTimerClassType	124
9.6.29	Defintion of	ResistenceClassType	125
9.6.30	Defintion of	RotaryVelocityClassType	125
9.6.31	Defintion of	SoundLevelClassType	125
9.6.32	Defintion of	StrainClassType	126
9.6.33	Defintion of	TemperatureClassType	126
9.6.34	Defintion of	TensionClassType	126
9.6.35	Defintion of	TiltClassType	127
9.6.36	Defintion of	TorqueClassType	127
9.6.37	Defintion of	VoltAmpereClassType	127
9.6.38	Defintion of	VelocityClassType	128
9.6.39	Defintion of	VoltAmpereReactiveClassType	128
9.6.40	Defintion of	ViscosityClassType	128
9.6.41	Defintion of	VoltageClassType	129
9.6.42	Defintion of	WattageClassType	129
9.7	Controlled Vocab	Data Item Types	129
9.7.1	Defintion of	MTControlledVocabEventClassType	130
9.7.2	Defintion of	ActuatorStateClassType	131
9.7.3	Defintion of	AvailabilityClassType	131
9.7.4	Defintion of	AxisCouplingClassType	132
9.7.5	Defintion of	AxisInterlockClassType	133
9.7.6	Defintion of	AxisStateClassType	133
9.7.7	Defintion of	ChuckInterlockClassType	134
9.7.8	Defintion of	ChuckStateClassType	135
9.7.9	Defintion of	ControllerModeClassType	135
9.7.10	Defintion of	ExecutionClassType	136
9.7.11	Defintion of	CompositionStateClassType	137
9.7.12	Defintion of	ControllerModeOverrideClassType	138
9.7.13	Defintion of	DirectionClassType	139
9.7.14	Defintion of	DoorStateClassType	139

9.7.15	Defintion of	EmergencyStopClassType	140
9.7.16	Defintion of	EndOfBarClassType	140
9.7.17	Defintion of	EquipmentModeClassType	141
9.7.18	Defintion of	FunctionalModeClassType	142
9.7.19	Defintion of	SpindleInterlockClassType	142
9.7.20	Defintion of	PathModeClassType	143
9.7.21	Defintion of	PowerStateClassType	144
9.7.22	Defintion of	ProgramEditClassType	144
9.7.23	Defintion of	RotaryModeClassType	145
9.7.24	Defintion of	InterfaceStateClassType	146
9.7.25	Defintion of	MaterialFeedClassType	146
9.7.26	Defintion of	MaterialChangeClassType	147
9.7.27	Defintion of	MaterialRetractClassType	148
9.7.28	Defintion of	MaterialLoadClassType	148
9.7.29	Defintion of	MaterialUnloadClassType	149
9.7.30	Defintion of	OpenDoorClassType	150
9.7.31	Defintion of	CloseDoorClassType	150
9.7.32	Defintion of	OpenChuckClassType	151
9.7.33	Defintion of	CloseChuckClassType	152
9.7.34	Defintion of	PartChangeClassType	152
9.8	Numeric Event Data Item Types		153
9.8.1	Defintion of	MTNumericEventClassType	153
9.8.2	Defintion of	AxisFeedrateOverrideClassType	154
9.8.3	Defintion of	BlockCountClassType	154
9.8.4	Defintion of	HardnessClassType	155
9.8.5	Defintion of	LineNumberClassType	155
9.8.6	Defintion of	PartCountClassType	156
9.8.7	Defintion of	RotaryVelocityOverrideClassType	156
9.9	String Event Data Item Types		156
9.9.1	Defintion of	MTStringEventClassType	157
9.9.2	Defintion of	BlockClassType	158
9.9.3	Defintion of	CoupledAxesClassType	158
9.9.4	Defintion of	LineLabelClassType	158
9.9.5	Defintion of	MaterialClassType	159
9.9.6	Defintion of	OperatorIdClassType	159
9.9.7	Defintion of	PalletIdClassType	159
9.9.8	Defintion of	PartIdClassType	160
9.9.9	Defintion of	PartNumberClassType	160
9.9.10	Defintion of	ProgramClassType	160
9.9.11	Defintion of	ProgramEditNameClassType	161
9.9.12	Defintion of	ProgramHeaderClassType	161
9.9.13	Defintion of	ProgramCommentClassType	161
9.9.14	Defintion of	SerialNumberClassType	162
9.9.15	Defintion of	ToolAssetIdClassType	162
9.9.16	Defintion of	ToolNumberClassType	162

9.9.17	Defintion of ToolOffsetClassType	163
9.9.18	Defintion of UserClassType	163
9.9.19	Defintion of WireClassType	164
9.9.20	Defintion of WorkholdingClassType	164
9.9.21	Defintion of WorkOffsetClassType	164
9.9.22	Defintion of MessageClassType	165
9.9.23	Defintion of AssetChangedClassType	165
9.9.24	Defintion of AssetRemovedClassType	165
9.9.25	Defintion of LineClassType	165
9.10	Condition Data Item Types	166
9.10.1	Defintion of ActuatorClassType	166
9.10.2	Defintion of CommunicationsClassType	166
9.10.3	Defintion of DataRangeClassType	166
9.10.4	Defintion of HardwareClassType	167
9.10.5	Defintion of LogicProgramClassType	167
9.10.6	Defintion of MotionProgramClassType	167
9.10.7	Defintion of SystemClassType	168
9.11	Data Item Sub Types	168
9.11.1	Defintion of MTDataItemSubClassType	168
9.11.2	Defintion of AbsoluteSubClassType	172
9.11.3	Defintion of ActualSubClassType	172
9.11.4	Defintion of ActionSubClassType	172
9.11.5	Defintion of AllSubClassType	172
9.11.6	Defintion of AlternatingSubClassType	173
9.11.7	Defintion of AScaleSubClassType	173
9.11.8	Defintion of AuxiliarySubClassType	173
9.11.9	Defintion of BadSubClassType	174
9.11.10	Defintion of BrinellSubClassType	174
9.11.11	Defintion of BScaleSubClassType	174
9.11.12	Defintion of CommandedSubClassType	175
9.11.13	Defintion of GoodSubClassType	175
9.11.14	Defintion of ControlSubClassType	175
9.11.15	Defintion of CScaleSubClassType	176
9.11.16	Defintion of DelaySubClassType	176
9.11.17	Defintion of DirectSubClassType	176
9.11.18	Defintion of DryRunSubClassType	177
9.11.19	Defintion of DScaleSubClassType	177
9.11.20	Defintion of FixtureSubClassType	177
9.11.21	Defintion of IncrementalSubClassType	178
9.11.22	Defintion of JobSubClassType	178
9.11.23	Defintion of KineticSubClassType	178
9.11.24	Defintion of LateralSubClassType	179
9.11.25	Defintion of LeebSubClassType	179
9.11.26	Defintion of LengthSubClassType	179
9.11.27	Defintion of LinearSubClassType	180

9.11.28	Defintion of LineSubClassType	180
9.11.29	Defintion of LoadedSubClassType	180
9.11.30	Defintion of MachineAxisLockSubClassType	181
9.11.31	Defintion of MaintenanceSubClassType	181
9.11.32	Defintion of ManualUnclampSubClassType	181
9.11.33	Defintion of MaximumSubClassType	182
9.11.34	Defintion of MinimumSubClassType	182
9.11.35	Defintion of MohsSubClassType	182
9.11.36	Defintion of MoleSubClassType	183
9.11.37	Defintion of MotionSubClassType	183
9.11.38	Defintion of NoScaleSubClassType	183
9.11.39	Defintion of OperatingSubClassType	184
9.11.40	Defintion of OperatorSubClassType	184
9.11.41	Defintion of OptionalStopSubClassType	184
9.11.42	Defintion of OverrideSubClassType	185
9.11.43	Defintion of PrimarySubClassType	185
9.11.44	Defintion of PoweredSubClassType	185
9.11.45	Defintion of ProbeSubClassType	186
9.11.46	Defintion of ProcessSubClassType	186
9.11.47	Defintion of ProgrammedSubClassType	186
9.11.48	Defintion of RadialSubClassType	187
9.11.49	Defintion of RapidSubClassType	187
9.11.50	Defintion of RelativeSubClassType	187
9.11.51	Defintion of RemainingSubClassType	188
9.11.52	Defintion of RequestSubClassType	188
9.11.53	Defintion of ResponseSubClassType	188
9.11.54	Defintion of RockwellSubClassType	189
9.11.55	Defintion of RotarySubClassType	189
9.11.56	Defintion of SetUpSubClassType	189
9.11.57	Defintion of ShoreSubClassType	190
9.11.58	Defintion of StandardSubClassType	190
9.11.59	Defintion of SwitchedSubClassType	190
9.11.60	Defintion of TargetSubClassType	191
9.11.61	Defintion of ToolChangeStopSubClassType	191
9.11.62	Defintion of ToolEdgeSubClassType	191
9.11.63	Defintion of ToolGroupSubClassType	192
9.11.64	Defintion of ToolSubClassType	192
9.11.65	Defintion of UasbleSubClassType	192
9.11.66	Defintion of VerticalSubClassType	193
9.11.67	Defintion of VolumeSubClassType	193
9.11.68	Defintion of VickersSubClassType	193
9.11.69	Defintion of WeightSubClassType	194
9.11.70	Defintion of WorkingSubClassType	194
9.11.71	Defintion of WorkpieceSubClassType	194
9.12	MTConnect Device Profile	195

9.12.1	Defintion of «Deprecated»	195
9.12.2	Defintion of «Dynamic Type»	196
9.12.3	Defintion of «HasMTClassType»	196
9.12.4	Defintion of «HasMTComposition»	196
9.12.5	Defintion of «HasMTReference»	196
9.12.6	Defintion of «HasMTSource»	197
9.12.7	Defintion of «HasMTSubClassType»	197
9.12.8	Defintion of «Mixes In»	197
9.12.9	Defintion of «bind»	198
9.12.10	Defintion of «mixin»	198
9.12.11	Defintion of «use»	198
9.12.12	Defintion of «values»	198
10	Profiles and Namespaces	199
10.1	Namespace Metadata	199
10.2	Conformance Units and Profiles	199
10.2.1	Server	199
10.2.2	Client	200
10.3	Handling of OPC UA Namespaces	200
Annex A	MTCConnect Namespace and Mappings	
	(normative)	202
A.1	Namespace and identifiers for MTCConnect Information Model	202

List of Figures

Figure 1: MTConnect Architecture Overview	14
Figure 2: The Scope of OPC UA within an Enterprise	16
Figure 3: A Basic Object in an OPC UA Address Space	17
Figure 4: The Relationship between Type Definitions and Instances	18
Figure 5: Reference Types from other Reference Types	19
Figure 6: References showing hierarchies and/or relationships	19
Figure 7: The OPC UA Information Model Notation for Types and Instances	20
Figure 8: The OPC UA Standard References	20
Figure 9: The Device Manufacturer Use Case	22
Figure 10: Device Manufacturer with Native MTConnect Agent	22
Figure 11: Device Manufacturer with Separate MTConnect Agent	23
Figure 12: The Independent Software Vendor (ISV) Use Case	24
Figure 13: MTConnect OPC UA and ROS Device Integration	25
Figure 14: MTConnect MTComponentType in OPC UA	27
Figure 15: MTConnect MTComponentType in UML	28
Figure 16: MTConnect Example Object	29
Figure 17: MTConnect Device Object	40
Figure 18: MTConnect Device Object with Data Items	42
Figure 19: MTConnect Data Item References	43
Figure 20: Linear X Axis Example	44
Figure 21: Rotary[C] Axis RotaryMode DataItem	46
Figure 22: Rotary[C] Axis RotaryVelocity DataItem	47
Figure 23: Rotary[C] Axis Load DataItem	48
Figure 24: Rotary[C] Axis Motor Amperage DataItem	49
Figure 25: Controller Component and Data Items	51
Figure 26: Path Component and Data Items	52
Figure 27: Electric System Component First Set	54
Figure 28: Electric System Component Second Set	56
Figure 29: Coolant System	58
Figure 30: Condition Branching	64
Figure 31: Components Diagram	71
Figure 32: MTComponentType Diagram	73
Figure 33: Component Types Diagram	78
Figure 34: Data Items Diagram	90
Figure 35: Conditions Diagram	109
Figure 36: MTConnect Device Profile Diagram	195

List of Tables

Table 1:	Examples of DataTypes	6
Table 2:	Type Definition Table	7
Table 3:	Common Node Attributes	9
Table 4:	Common Object Attributes	9
Table 5:	Common Variable Attributes	10
Table 6:	Common VariableTypes Attributes	10
Table 7:	Common Method Attributes	11
Table 8:	ExecutionDataType Enumeration	32
Table 9:	EngineeringUnits DataType structure	37
Table 10:	EngineeringUnits DataType structure	38
Table 11:	EngineeringUnits DataType structure (Continued)	39
Table 12:	MTConnect ResetTrigger to OPC UA StatusCode mapping	55
Table 13:	ControllerModeDataType Enumeration	62
Table 14:	LogicProgramCondition States	65
Table 15:	MTChannelType Definition	72
Table 16:	MTComponentType Definition	74
Table 17:	MTDeviceType Definition	75
Table 18:	MTCompositionType Definition	76
Table 19:	MTConfigurationType Definition	76
Table 20:	MTSensorConfigurationType Definition	77
Table 21:	MTDescriptionType Definition	77
Table 22:	ActuatorType Definition	78
Table 23:	AuxiliariesType Definition	79
Table 24:	BarFeederType Definition	79
Table 25:	EnvironmentalType Definition	79
Table 26:	LoaderType Definition	80
Table 27:	SensorType Definition	80
Table 28:	ToolingDeliveryType Definition	80
Table 29:	WasteDisposalType Definition	81
Table 30:	AxesType Definition	81
Table 31:	LinearType Definition	81
Table 32:	RotaryType Definition	82
Table 33:	ChuckType Definition	82
Table 34:	ControllerType Definition	82
Table 35:	PathType Definition	83
Table 36:	DoorType Definition	83
Table 37:	InterfacesType Definition	83
Table 38:	BarFeederInterfaceType Definition	84
Table 39:	ChuckInterfaceType Definition	84
Table 40:	DoorInterfaceType Definition	84
Table 41:	MaterialHandlerInterfaceType Definition	85
Table 42:	ResourcesType Definition	85
Table 43:	MaterialsType Definition	85

Table 44:	StockType Definition	86
Table 45:	PersonnelType Definition	86
Table 46:	SystemsType Definition	86
Table 47:	CoolantType Definition	87
Table 48:	DielectricType Definition	87
Table 49:	ElectricType Definition	87
Table 50:	EnclosureType Definition	88
Table 51:	FeederType Definition	88
Table 52:	HydraulicType Definition	88
Table 53:	LubricationType Definition	89
Table 54:	PneumaticType Definition	89
Table 55:	ProcessPowerType Definition	89
Table 56:	ProtectiveType Definition	90
Table 57:	AssetEventDataType DataType	91
Table 58:	MTAssetEventType Definition	92
Table 59:	MTConditionClassType Definition	93
Table 60:	MTConstraintType Definition	93
Table 61:	MTControlledVocabEventType Definition	94
Table 62:	MTDataItemType Definition	95
Table 63:	MTCategoryType Enumeration	95
Table 64:	MTRepresentationType Enumeration	96
Table 65:	MTRepresentationType Enumeration	96
Table 66:	MTCategoryType Enumeration	96
Table 67:	MTRepresentationType Enumeration	97
Table 68:	MTCategoryType Enumeration	97
Table 69:	MTNumericDataItemType Definition	98
Table 70:	MTStatisticType Enumeration	98
Table 71:	MTCoordinateSystemType Enumeration	99
Table 72:	MTResetTriggerType Enumeration	99
Table 73:	MTEventClassType Definition	99
Table 74:	MTMessageEventType Definition	100
Table 75:	MTMessageType Definition	101
Table 76:	MTNumericEventType Definition	102
Table 77:	MTSampleType Definition	104
Table 78:	MTStringEventType Definition	106
Table 79:	MTThreeSpaceSampleType Definition	107
Table 80:	MessageDataType DataType	108
Table 81:	ThreeSpaceSampleDataType DataType	108
Table 82:	MTConditionType Definition	111
Table 83:	MTSeverityDataType Enumeration	112
Table 84:	QualifierDataType Enumeration	112
Table 85:	MTDataItemClassType Definition	113
Table 86:	MTMessageClassType Definition	113
Table 87:	MTSampleClassType Definition	114
Table 88:	LoadClassType Definition	116

Table 89:	AccelerationClassType Definition	116
Table 90:	AccumulatedTimeClassType Definition	116
Table 91:	AngularAccelerationClassType Definition	117
Table 92:	AngularVelocityClassType Definition	117
Table 93:	AmperageClassType Definition	117
Table 94:	AngleClassType Definition	118
Table 95:	AxisFeedrateClassType Definition	118
Table 96:	ClockTimeClassType Definition	118
Table 97:	ConcentrationClassType Definition	119
Table 98:	ConductivityClassType Definition	119
Table 99:	DisplacementClassType Definition	119
Table 100:	ElectricalEnergyClassType Definition	120
Table 101:	EquipmentTimerClassType Definition	120
Table 102:	FillLevelClassType Definition	120
Table 103:	FlowClassType Definition	121
Table 104:	FrequencyClassType Definition	121
Table 105:	LengthClassType Definition	121
Table 106:	LinearForceClassType Definition	122
Table 107:	MassClassType Definition	122
Table 108:	PathFeedrateClassType Definition	122
Table 109:	PathPositionClassType Definition	123
Table 110:	PHClassType Definition	123
Table 111:	PositionClassType Definition	123
Table 112:	PowerFactorClassType Definition	124
Table 113:	PressureClassType Definition	124
Table 114:	ProcessTimerClassType Definition	125
Table 115:	ResistenceClassType Definition	125
Table 116:	RotaryVelocityClassType Definition	125
Table 117:	SoundLevelClassType Definition	126
Table 118:	StrainClassType Definition	126
Table 119:	TemperatureClassType Definition	126
Table 120:	TensionClassType Definition	127
Table 121:	TiltClassType Definition	127
Table 122:	TorqueClassType Definition	127
Table 123:	VoltAmpereClassType Definition	128
Table 124:	VelocityClassType Definition	128
Table 125:	VoltAmpereReactiveClassType Definition	128
Table 126:	ViscosityClassType Definition	129
Table 127:	VoltageClassType Definition	129
Table 128:	WattageClassType Definition	129
Table 129:	MTCcontrolledVocabEventClassType Definition	130
Table 130:	ActuatorStateClassType Definition	131
Table 131:	ActiveStateDataType Enumeration	131
Table 132:	AvailabilityClassType Definition	132
Table 133:	AvailabilityDataType Enumeration	132

Table 134: AxisCouplingClassType Definition	132
Table 135: AxisCouplingDataType Enumeration	133
Table 136: AxisInterlockClassType Definition	133
Table 137: ActiveStateDataType Enumeration	133
Table 138: AxisStateClassType Definition	134
Table 139: AxisStateDataType Enumeration	134
Table 140: ChuckInterlockClassType Definition	134
Table 141: ActiveStateDataType Enumeration	135
Table 142: ChuckStateClassType Definition	135
Table 143: OpenStateDataType Enumeration	135
Table 144: ControllerModeClassType Definition	136
Table 145: ControllerModeDataType Enumeration	136
Table 146: ExecutionClassType Definition	136
Table 147: ExecutionDataType Enumeration	137
Table 148: CompositionStateClassType Definition	137
Table 149: CompositionStateDataType Enumeration	138
Table 150: ControllerModeOverrideClassType Definition	138
Table 151: OnOffDataType Enumeration	138
Table 152: DirectionClassType Definition	139
Table 153: DirectionDataType Enumeration	139
Table 154: DoorStateClassType Definition	139
Table 155: OpenStateDataType Enumeration	140
Table 156: EmergencyStopClassType Definition	140
Table 157: EmergencyStopDataType Enumeration	140
Table 158: EndOfBarClassType Definition	141
Table 159: YesNoDataType Enumeration	141
Table 160: EquipmentModeClassType Definition	141
Table 161: OnOffDataType Enumeration	142
Table 162: FunctionalModeClassType Definition	142
Table 163: FunctionalModeDataType Enumeration	142
Table 164: SpindleInterlockClassType Definition	143
Table 165: ActiveStateDataType Enumeration	143
Table 166: PathModeClassType Definition	143
Table 167: PathModeDataType Enumeration	144
Table 168: PowerStateClassType Definition	144
Table 169: OnOffDataType Enumeration	144
Table 170: ProgramEditClassType Definition	145
Table 171: ProgramEditDataType Enumeration	145
Table 172: RotaryModeClassType Definition	145
Table 173: RotaryModeDataType Enumeration	146
Table 174: InterfaceStateClassType Definition	146
Table 175: InterfaceStatusDataType Enumeration	146
Table 176: MaterialFeedClassType Definition	147
Table 177: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration	147
Table 178: MaterialChangeClassType Definition	147

Table 179: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration	148
Table 180: MaterialRetractClassType Definition	148
Table 181: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration	148
Table 182: MaterialLoadClassType Definition	149
Table 183: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration	149
Table 184: MaterialUnloadClassType Definition	149
Table 185: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration	150
Table 186: OpenDoorClassType Definition	150
Table 187: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration	150
Table 188: CloseDoorClassType Definition	151
Table 189: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration	151
Table 190: OpenChuckClassType Definition	151
Table 191: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration	152
Table 192: CloseChuckClassType Definition	152
Table 193: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration	152
Table 194: PartChangeClassType Definition	153
Table 195: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration	153
Table 196: MTNumericEventClassType Definition	154
Table 197: AxisFeedrateOverrideClassType Definition	154
Table 198: BlockCountClassType Definition	155
Table 199: HardnessClassType Definition	155
Table 200: LineNumberClassType Definition	156
Table 201: PartCountClassType Definition	156
Table 202: RotaryVelocityOverrideClassType Definition	156
Table 203: MTStringEventClassType Definition	157
Table 204: BlockClassType Definition	158
Table 205: CoupledAxesClassType Definition	158
Table 206: LineLabelClassType Definition	159
Table 207: MaterialClassType Definition	159
Table 208: OperatorIdClassType Definition	159
Table 209: PalletIdClassType Definition	160
Table 210: PartIdClassType Definition	160
Table 211: PartNumberClassType Definition	160
Table 212: ProgramClassType Definition	161
Table 213: ProgramEditNameClassType Definition	161
Table 214: ProgramHeaderClassType Definition	161
Table 215: ProgramCommentClassType Definition	162
Table 216: SerialNumberClassType Definition	162
Table 217: ToolAssetIdClassType Definition	162
Table 218: ToolNumberClassType Definition	163
Table 219: ToolOffsetClassType Definition	163
Table 220: UserClassType Definition	163
Table 221: WireClassType Definition	164
Table 222: WorkholdingClassType Definition	164
Table 223: WorkOffsetClassType Definition	164

Table 224: MessageClassType Definition	165
Table 225: AssetChangedClassType Definition	165
Table 226: AssetRemovedClassType Definition	165
Table 227: LineClassType Definition	166
Table 228: ActuatorClassType Definition	166
Table 229: CommunicationsClassType Definition	166
Table 230: DataRangeClassType Definition	167
Table 231: HardwareClassType Definition	167
Table 232: LogicProgramClassType Definition	167
Table 233: MotionProgramClassType Definition	168
Table 234: SystemClassType Definition	168
Table 235: MTDDataItemSubClassType Definition	169
Table 236: AbsoluteSubClassType Definition	172
Table 237: ActualSubClassType Definition	172
Table 238: ActionSubClassType Definition	172
Table 239: AllSubClassType Definition	173
Table 240: AlternatingSubClassType Definition	173
Table 241: AScaleSubClassType Definition	173
Table 242: AuxiliarySubClassType Definition	174
Table 243: BadSubClassType Definition	174
Table 244: BrinellSubClassType Definition	174
Table 245: BScaleSubClassType Definition	175
Table 246: CommandedSubClassType Definition	175
Table 247: GoodSubClassType Definition	175
Table 248: ControlSubClassType Definition	176
Table 249: CScaleSubClassType Definition	176
Table 250: DelaySubClassType Definition	176
Table 251: DirectSubClassType Definition	177
Table 252: DryRunSubClassType Definition	177
Table 253: DScaleSubClassType Definition	177
Table 254: FixtureSubClassType Definition	178
Table 255: IncrementalSubClassType Definition	178
Table 256: JobSubClassType Definition	178
Table 257: KineticSubClassType Definition	179
Table 258: LateralSubClassType Definition	179
Table 259: LeebSubClassType Definition	179
Table 260: LengthSubClassType Definition	180
Table 261: LinearSubClassType Definition	180
Table 262: LineSubClassType Definition	180
Table 263: LoadedSubClassType Definition	181
Table 264: MachineAxisLockSubClassType Definition	181
Table 265: MaintenanceSubClassType Definition	181
Table 266: ManualUnclampSubClassType Definition	182
Table 267: MaximumSubClassType Definition	182
Table 268: MinimumSubClassType Definition	182

Table 269: MohsSubClassType Definition	183
Table 270: MoleSubClassType Definition	183
Table 271: MotionSubClassType Definition	183
Table 272: NoScaleSubClassType Definition	184
Table 273: OperatingSubClassType Definition	184
Table 274: OperatorSubClassType Definition	184
Table 275: OptionalStopSubClassType Definition	185
Table 276: OverrideSubClassType Definition	185
Table 277: PrimarySubClassType Definition	185
Table 278: PoweredSubClassType Definition	186
Table 279: ProbeSubClassType Definition	186
Table 280: ProcessSubClassType Definition	186
Table 281: ProgrammedSubClassType Definition	187
Table 282: RadialSubClassType Definition	187
Table 283: RapidSubClassType Definition	187
Table 284: RelativeSubClassType Definition	188
Table 285: RemainingSubClassType Definition	188
Table 286: RequestSubClassType Definition	188
Table 287: ResponseSubClassType Definition	189
Table 288: RockwellSubClassType Definition	189
Table 289: RotarySubClassType Definition	189
Table 290: SetUpSubClassType Definition	190
Table 291: ShoreSubClassType Definition	190
Table 292: StandardSubClassType Definition	190
Table 293: SwitchedSubClassType Definition	191
Table 294: TargetSubClassType Definition	191
Table 295: ToolChangeStopSubClassType Definition	191
Table 296: ToolEdgeSubClassType Definition	192
Table 297: ToolGroupSubClassType Definition	192
Table 298: ToolSubClassType Definition	192
Table 299: UsableSubClassType Definition	193
Table 300: VerticalSubClassType Definition	193
Table 301: VolumeSubClassType Definition	193
Table 302: VickersSubClassType Definition	194
Table 303: WeightSubClassType Definition	194
Table 304: WorkingSubClassType Definition	194
Table 305: WorkpieceSubClassType Definition	195
Table 306: «HasMTClassType» Definition	196
Table 307: «HasMTComposition» Definition	196
Table 308: «HasMTReference» Definition	197
Table 309: «HasMTSource» Definition	197
Table 310: «HasMTSubClassType» Definition	197
Table 311: NamespaceMetadata <i>Object</i> for this Specification	199
Table 312: MTConnect <i>Server</i> Information Model	200
Table 313: MTConnect <i>Client</i> Information Model	200

Table 314: Namespaces used in a MTConnect Server 201
Table 315: Namespaces used used in this specification 201

1 OPC Foundation and MTConnect[®] Institute

2 AGREEMENT OF USE

3 All terms of use defined in documents provided by the OPC Foundation and the MTCon-
4 nect Institute and referenced in this document are hereby incorporated and shall apply in
5 their entirety into this document. Any conflict in terms between referenced documents and
6 terms defined in this document shall default in priority to the terms defined in the original
7 referenced documents.

8 Copyright[©] 2018, OPC Foundation, Inc.

9 COPYRIGHT RESTRICTIONS

- 10 • This document is provided "as is" by the OPC Foundation and the MTConnect In-
11 stitute.
- 12 • Right of use for this specification is restricted to this specification and does not grant
13 rights of use for referred documents.
- 14 • Right of use for this specification will be granted without cost.
- 15 • This document may be distributed through computer systems, printed or copied as
16 long as the content remains unchanged and the document is not modified.
- 17 • OPC Foundation and the MTConnect Institute do not guarantee usability for any
18 purpose and shall not be made liable for any case using the content of this document.
- 19 • The user of the document agrees to indemnify OPC Foundation and the MTCon-
20 nect Institute and their officers, directors and agents harmless from all demands,
21 claims, actions, losses, damages (including damages from personal injuries), costs
22 and expenses (including attorneys' fees) which are in any way related to activities
23 associated with its use of content from this specification.
- 24 • The document shall not be used in conjunction with company advertising, shall not
25 be sold or licensed to any party.
- 26 • The intellectual property and copyright is solely owned by the OPC Foundation and
27 the MTConnect Institute.

28 PATENTS

29 The attention of adopters is directed to the possibility that compliance with or adoption of
30 OPC or the MTConnect Institute specifications may require use of an invention covered
31 by patent rights. OPC Foundation or the MTConnect Institute shall not be responsible for

32 identifying patents for which a license may be required by any OPC or the MTConnect
33 Institute specification, or for conducting legal inquiries into the legal validity or scope of
34 those patents that are brought to its attention. OPC or the MTConnect Institute specifica-
35 tions are prospective and advisory only. Prospective users are responsible for protecting
36 themselves against liability for infringement of patents.

37 **WARRANTY AND LIABILITY DISCLAIMERS**

38 WHILE THIS PUBLICATION IS BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE, IT IS PROVIDED
39 "AS IS" AND MAY CONTAIN ERRORS OR MISPRINTS. THE OPC FOUNDATION
40 NOR THE MTCONNECT INSTITUTE MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND,
41 EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, WITH REGARD TO THIS PUBLICATION, INCLUDING
42 BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTY OF TITLE OR OWNERSHIP, IMPLIED
43 WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PAR-
44 TICULAR PURPOSE OR USE. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OPC FOUNDATION NOR
45 THE MTCONNECT INSTITUTE BE LIABLE FOR ERRORS CONTAINED HEREIN
46 OR FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, RELIANCE
47 OR COVER DAMAGES, INCLUDING LOSS OF PROFITS, REVENUE, DATA OR
48 USE, INCURRED BY ANY USER OR ANY THIRD PARTY IN CONNECTION WITH
49 THE FURNISHING, PERFORMANCE, OR USE OF THIS MATERIAL, EVEN IF AD-
50 VISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

51 The entire risk as to the quality and performance of software developed using this specifi-
52 cation is borne by you.

53 **RESTRICTED RIGHTS LEGEND**

54 This Specification is provided with Restricted Rights. Use, duplication or disclosure by
55 the U.S. government is subject to restrictions as set forth in (a) this Agreement pursuant
56 to DFARs 227.7202-3(a); (b) subparagraph (c)(1)(i) of the Rights in Technical Data and
57 Computer Software clause at DFARs 252.227-7013; or (c) the Commercial Computer
58 Software Restricted Rights clause at FAR 52.227-19 subdivision (c)(1) and (2), as appli-
59 cable. Contractor / manufacturer are the OPC Foundation, 16101 N. 82nd Street, Suite
60 3B, Scottsdale, AZ, 85260-1830 and MTConnect Institute, 7901 Jones Branch Dr., Suite
61 900, McLean, VA 22102-3316

62 **COMPLIANCE**

63 The combination of the MTConnect Institute and OPC Foundation shall at all times be the
64 sole entities that may authorize developers, suppliers and sellers of hardware and software
65 to use certification marks, trademarks or other special designations to indicate compliance
66 with these materials as specified within this document. Products developed using this
67 specification may claim compliance or conformance with this specification if and only
68 if the software satisfactorily meets the certification requirements set by the MTConnect
69 Institute or the OPC Foundation. Products that do not meet these requirements may claim
70 only that the product was based on this specification and must not claim compliance or

71 conformance with this specification.

72 **TRADEMARKS**

73 MTConnect[®] is a registered trademark of the The Association for Manufacturing Tech-
74 nology (AMT).

75 Most computer and software brand names have trademarks or registered trademarks. The
76 individual trademarks have not been listed here.

77 **GENERAL PROVISIONS**

78 Should any provision of this Agreement be held to be void, invalid, unenforceable or illegal
79 by a court, the validity and enforceability of the other provisions shall not be affected
80 thereby.

81 This Agreement shall be governed by and construed under the laws of Germany.

82 This Agreement embodies the entire understanding between the parties with respect to,
83 and supersedes any prior understanding or agreement (oral or written) relating to, this
84 specification.

85 1 Scope

86 In September 2010, the OPC Foundation and the MTConnect Institute signed a mem-
87 orandum of understanding to extend the reach of existing manufacturing data exchange
88 standards to:

- 89 • Evolve the existing standards from each organization to provide complete manufac-
90 turing technology interoperability.
- 91 • Provide a mechanism for continuous improvement of those standards and specifica-
92 tions.
- 93 • Support the evolution of digital manufacturing systems.
- 94 • Provide a coordinating function to harmonize work between the organizations.
- 95 • Educate customers and suppliers on the standards and specifications.
- 96 • Provide a foundation for adopting the standards, specifications, and associated tech-
97 nology into real products.

98 The first document produced was the MTConnect-OPC UA Companion Specification, Ver-
99 sion 1.0 (2012), which defines a method for interoperability between the standards. It also
100 identifies how the standards can be used together in manufacturing systems.

101 This document, OPC Unified Architecture for MTConnect Companion Specification, Ver-
102 sion 2.0, updates the original companion specification and incorporates the latest capabil-
103 ities and functions.

104 The technologies provided from these two organizations include:

105 OPC Foundation

106 OPC is an interoperability standard for the secure and reliable exchange of data and infor-
107 mation in the industrial automation space and in other industries. It is platform indepen-
108 dent and ensures the seamless flow of information among devices from multiple vendors.
109 The OPC Foundation is responsible for the development and maintenance of this standard.
110 OPC UA is a platform independent service-oriented architecture that integrates all the
111 functionality of the individual OPC Classic specifications into one extensible framework.
112 This multi-layered approach accomplishes the original design specification goals of:

- 113 • Platform independence: from an embedded microcontroller to cloud-based infras-
114 tructure
- 115 • Secure: encryption, authentication, authorization and auditing

- 116 • Extensible: ability to add new features including transports without affecting exist-
117 ing applications
- 118 • Comprehensive information modelling capabilities: for defining any model from
119 simple to complex

120 MTConnect Institute

121 MTConnect is a data and information exchange standard that is based on a data dictionary
122 of terms describing information associated with manufacturing operations. The standard
123 also defines a series of semantic data models that provide a clear and unambiguous repre-
124 sentation of how that information relates to a manufacturing operation. The MTConnect
125 Standard has been designed to:

- 126 • Enhance the data acquisition capabilities from equipment in manufacturing facilities
- 127 • Expand the use of data driven decision making in manufacturing operations
- 128 • Enable software applications and manufacturing equipment to move toward a plug-
129 and-play environment to reduce the cost of integration of manufacturing software
130 systems.

131 The MTConnect Institute is responsible for development of the MTConnect Standard.
132 The Institute is a 501(c)(6) not-for-profit standards development organization and is a sub-
133 sidiary of The Association for Manufacturing Technology (AMT). Its mission is to create
134 open standards to foster greater interoperability between devices and clients by defining
135 the structure and terminology used in communications in the discrete parts manufacturing
136 sector.

137 **2 OPC Unified Architecture for MTConnect Compan-** 138 **ion Specification Goals**

139 This companion specification has been develop to provide the following:

- 140 • Encourage broad and rapid adoption. Support suppliers of equipment and software
141 in adopting the included technology.
- 142 • Allow both standards to evolve independently without jeopardizing backwards com-
143 patibility with previous implementations.
- 144 • Support extensibility to allow customized machine or installation specific use cases
145 without jeopardizing compatibility.
- 146 • Maintain the non-proprietary philosophy of each standards body in support of in-
147 creased productivity in manufacturing.

148 **3 Who Will Find Benefit from this Companion Specifi-** 149 **cation?**

150 This companion specification is written for those who:

- 151 • Have a clear understanding of both MTConnect and OPC UA.
- 152 • Wish to implement communication products that incorporate the combined func-
 153 tions of both standards.
- 154 • Support backend solutions with OPC UA Server and MTConnect Agent.
- 155 • Develop or want to develop client software applications with OPC UA and MTCon-
 156 nect.
- 157 • Have a reasonable level of programming expertise.

158 **4 Normative References**

159 The following referenced documents are indispensable for applying this specification. For
 160 dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition
 161 of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

162 **4.1 OPC UA References**

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 163 [UA Amend 1] | <i>OPC UA Specification Amendment 1: Analog Types.</i> URL: https://opcfoundation.org/developer-tools/specifications-unified-architecture/errata-and-amendments/ . |
| 164 | |
| 165 | |
| 166 [UA Part 01] | <i>OPC UA Specification: Part 1 – Overview and Concepts.</i> URL: http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/Part1/ . |
| 167 | |
| 168 [UA Part 02] | <i>OPC UA Specification: Part 2 – Security Model.</i> URL: http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/Part2/ . |
| 169 | |
| 170 [UA Part 03] | <i>OPC UA Specification: Part 3 – Address Space Model.</i> URL: http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/Part3/ . |
| 171 | |
| 172 [UA Part 04] | <i>OPC UA Specification: Part 4 – Services.</i> URL: http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/Part4/ . |
| 173 | |
| 174 [UA Part 05] | <i>OPC UA Specification: Part 5 – Information Model.</i> URL: http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/Part5/ . |
| 175 | |

- 176 [UA Part 06] *OPC UA Specification: Part 6 – Mappings*. URL: <http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/Part6/>.
177
- 178 [UA Part 07] *OPC UA Specification: Part 7 – Profiles*. URL: <http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/Part7/>.
179
- 180 [UA Part 08] *OPC UA Specification: Part 8 – Data Access*. URL: <http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/Part8/>.
181
- 182 [UA Part 09] *OPC UA Specification: Part 9 – Alarms and Conditions*. URL: <http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/Part9/>.
183
- 184 [UA Part 10] *OPC UA Specification: Part 10 – Programs*. URL: <http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/Part10/>.
185

186 4.2 MTConnect References

- 187 [MTConnect Part 1.0] *MTConnect Standard Part 1.0 - Overview and Fundamentals*. Version 1.4.0. URL: <http://bit.ly/2Ca0lt1>.
188
- 189 [MTConnect Part 2.0] *MTConnect Standard: Part 2.0 - Devices Information Model*. Version 1.4.0. URL: <http://bit.ly/2OVfEy6>.
190
- 191 [MTConnect Part 3.0] *MTConnect Standard: Part 3.0 - Streams Information Model*. Version 1.4.0. URL: <http://bit.ly/2pMob8q>.
192
- 193 [MTConnect Part 4.0] *MTConnect Standard: Part 4.0 - Assets Information Model*. Version 1.4.0. URL: <http://bit.ly/2yyLc2D>.
194
- 195 [MTConnect Part 4.1] *MTConnect Standard: Part 4.1 - Cutting Tools*. Version 1.4.0. URL: <http://bit.ly/2A5eDeN>.
196
- 197 [MTConnect Part 5.0] *MTConnect Standard: Part 5.0 - Interfaces*. Version 1.4.0. URL: <http://bit.ly/2pPNGFY>.
198

199 4.3 Other References

- 200 [Fie00] Roy Thomas Fielding. “Architectural Styles and the Design of Network-based Software Architectures”. PhD thesis. 2000. ISBN: 0599871180. DOI: [10.1.1.91.2433](https://doi.org/10.1.1.91.2433).
201
202

203 5 Terms, Definitions and Conventions

204 5.1 Overview

205 The basic concepts of OPC UA and MTConnect are pre-requisites for understanding and
 206 interpreting the content provided in this companion specification. Additionally, the terms
 207 and definitions given in [UA Part 01], [UA Part 02], [UA Part 03], [UA Part 05], [UA Part
 208 07], [UA Part 10], and [MTConnect Part 1.0], (see section 4), as well as the following,
 209 apply to this document.

210 5.2 Conventions

211 Following are basic conventions that shall be followed for all formal definitions used:
 212 MTConnect Terms will be displayed as follows using italic font (*MTConnect Term*). OPC
 213 UA Terms will use bold italic fonts (***OPC UA Term***). Terms will be linked to the associated
 214 glossary entry if available.

215 MTConnect Extensible Markup Language (XML) literals and code will appear in monospace
 216 `MTConnectCode` and OPC UA literals and UA Model will appear as bold monospace
 217 **UAObjectsAndTypes**.

218 5.3 Terms and Acronyms

219 5.3.1 Conventions for Node descriptions

220 *Node* definitions are specified using tables (see Table 2).

221 *Attributes* are defined by providing the Attribute name and a value, or a description of the
 222 value.

223 *References* are defined by providing the **ReferenceType** name, the **BrowseName** of
 224 the *TargetNode* and its *NodeClass*.

- 225 • If the *TargetNode* is a component of the *Node* being defined in the table the *At-*
 226 *tributes* of the composed Node are defined in the same row of the table.
- 227 • The **DataType** is only specified for Variables; "[<number>]" indicates a single-
 228 dimensional array, for multi-dimensional arrays the expression is repeated for each
 229 dimension (e.g. [2][3] for a two-dimensional array). For all arrays the *ArrayDi-*
 230 *mensions* is set as identified by <number> values. If no <number> is set, the
 231 corresponding dimension is set to 0, indicating an unknown size. If no number is
 232 provided at all the *ArrayDimensions* can be omitted. If no brackets are provided, it
 233 identifies a scalar **DataType** and the **ValueRank** is set to the corresponding value

234 (see [UA Part 03]). In addition, *ArrayDimensions* is set to **null** or is omitted. If it
 235 can be **Any** or **ScalarOrOneDimension**, the value is put into "**<value>**", so
 236 either "**Any**" or "**ScalarOrOneDimension**" and the **ValueRank** is set to the
 237 corresponding value (see [UA Part 03]) and the *ArrayDimensions* is set to **null** or
 238 is omitted. Examples are given in Table 1.

- 239 • The *Type Definition* is specified for *Objects* and *Variables*.
- 240 • The *Type Definition* column specifies a symbolic name for a **NodeId**, i.e. the spec-
 241 ified *Node* points with a **HasTypeDefinition Reference** to the corresponding
 242 *Node*.
- 243 • The **ModellingRule** of the referenced component is provided by specifying the
 244 symbolic name of the rule in **ModellingRule**. In the *AddressSpace*, the *Node*
 245 shall use a **HasModellingRule Reference** to point to the corresponding **Mod-**
 246 **ellingRule Object**.

Table 1: Examples of DataTypes

Notation	DataType	ValueRank	ArrayDimensions	Description
Int32	Int32	-1	omitted or null	A scalar Int32.
Int32[]	Int32	1	omitted or {0}	Single-dimensional array of Int32 with an unknown size.
Int32[][]	Int32	2	omitted or {0,0}	Two-dimensional array of Int32 with unknown sizes for both dimensions.
Int32[3][]	Int32	2	{3,0}	Two-dimensional array of Int32 with a size of 3 for the first dimension and an unknown size for the second dimension.
Int32[5][3]	Int32	2	{5,3}	Two-dimensional array of Int32 with a size of 5 for the first dimension and a size of 3 for the second dimension.
Int32{Any}	Int32	-2	omitted or null	An Int32 where it is unknown if it is scalar or array with any number of dimensions.
Int32 {ScalarO- rOneDimen- sion}	Int32	-3	omitted or null	An Int32 where it is either a single-dimensional array or a scalar.

247 If the **NodeId** of a **DataType** is provided, the symbolic name of the *Node* representing
 248 the **DataType** shall be used.

249 Nodes of all other *NodeClasses* cannot be defined in the same table; therefore only the used
 250 **ReferenceType**, their *NodeClass* and their **BrowseName** are specified. A reference
 251 to another part of this document points to their definition.

252 Table 2 illustrates the table. If no components are provided, the **DataType**, **Type Def-**
 253 **inition** and **ModellingRule** columns may be omitted and only a Comment column is
 254 introduced to point to the **Node** definition.

Table 2: Type Definition Table

Attribute	Value				
Attribute name	Attribute value. If it is an optional Attribute that is not set "-" will be used.				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	TypeDefinition	Modeling Rule
ReferenceType name	NodeClass of the target Node.	BrowseName of the target Node. If the Reference is to be instantiated by the server, then the value of the target Node's BrowseName is "-".	DataType of the referenced Node, only applicable for Variable.	TypeDefinition of the referenced Node, only applicable for Variable and Object.	Referenced ModellingRule of the referenced Object.
Note: Notes referencing footnotes of the table content.					

255 Components of **Nodes** can be complex that is containing components by themselves. The
 256 **Type Definition**, **NodeClass**, **DataType** and **ModellingRule** can be derived from the
 257 type definitions, and the symbolic name can be created. Therefore, those containing com-
 258 ponents are not explicitly specified; they are implicitly specified by the type definitions.

259 5.3.2 NodeIds and BrowseNames

260 5.3.2.1 NodeIds

261 The **NodeIds** of all **Nodes** described in this standard are only symbolic names. Annex A
 262 defines the actual **NodeIds**.

263 The symbolic name of each **Node** defined in this specification is its **BrowseName**, or,
 264 when it is part of another Node, the **BrowseName** of the other **Node**, a ".", and the
 265 **BrowseName** of itself. In this case "part of" means that the whole has a **HasProperty**
 266 or **HasComponent** Reference to its part. Since all **Nodes** not being part of another **Node**
 267 have a unique name in this specification, the symbolic name is unique.

268 The namespace for all **NodeIds** defined in this specification is defined in Annex A. The
 269 namespace for this **NamespaceIndex** is Server-specific and depends on the position of the
 270 namespace URI in the server namespace table.

271 Note that this specification not only defines concrete **Nodes**, but also requires that some
 272 Nodes shall be generated, for example one for each Session running on the Server. The

273 **NodeIds** of those *Nodes* are Server-specific, including the namespace. But the *Names-*
274 *paceIndex* of those *Nodes* cannot be the *NamespaceIndex* used for the Nodes defined in
275 this specification, because they are not defined by this specification but generated by the
276 Server.

277 5.3.2.2 BrowseNames

278 The text part of the *BrowseNames* for all *Nodes* defined in this specification is specified
279 in the tables defining the Nodes. The *NamespaceIndex* for all *BrowseNames* defined in
280 this specification is defined in Annex A.

281 5.3.3 Common Attributes

282 5.3.3.1 General

283 The *Attributes* of *Nodes*, their *DataTypes* and descriptions are defined in [UA Part 03].
284 *Attributes* not marked as optional are mandatory and shall be provided by a Server. The
285 following tables define if the *Attribute* value is defined by this specification or if it is
286 server-specific.

287 For all Nodes specified in this specification, the *Attributes* named in Table 3 shall be set
288 as specified in the table.

Table 3: Common Node Attributes

Attribute	Value
DisplayName	The DisplayName is a LocalizedText. Each server shall provide the DisplayName identical to the BrowseName of the Node for the LocaleId "en". Whether the server provides translated names for other LocaleIds is server-specific.
Description	Optionally a server-specific description is provided.
NodeClass	Shall reflect the NodeClass of the Node.
NodeId	The NodeId is described by BrowseNames.
WriteMask	Optionally the WriteMask Attribute can be provided. If the WriteMask Attribute is provided, it shall set all non-server-specific Attributes to not writable. For example, the Description Attribute may be set to writable since a Server may provide a server-specific description for the Node. The NodeId shall not be writable, because it is defined for each Node in this specification.
UserWriteMask	Optionally the UserWriteMask Attribute can be provided. The same rules as for the WriteMask Attribute apply.
RolePermissions	Optionally server-specific role permissions can be provided.
UserRolePermissions	Optionally the role permissions of the current Session can be provided. The value is server-specific and depend on the RolePermissions Attribute (if provided) and the current Session.
AccessRestrictions	Optionally server-specific access restrictions can be provided.

289 5.3.3.2 Objects

290 For all *Objects* specified in this specification, the *Attributes* named in Table 4 shall
 291 be set as specified in the Table 4. The definitions for the *Attributes* can be found in
 292 OPC [UA Part 03].

Table 4: Common Object Attributes

Attribute	Value
EventNotifier	Whether the Node can be used to subscribe to Events or not is server-specific.

293 5.3.3.3 Variables

294 For all *Variables* specified in this specification, the *Attributes* named in Table 5 shall be
 295 set as specified in the table. The definitions for the *Attributes* can be found in [UA Part
 296 03].

Table 5: Common Variable Attributes

Attribute	Value
MinimumSamplingInterval	Optionally, a server-specific minimum sampling interval is provided.
AccessLevel	The access level for Variables used for type definitions is server-specific, for all other Variables defined in this specification, the access level shall allow reading; other settings are server-specific.
UserAccessLevel	The value for the UserAccessLevel Attribute is server-specific. It is assumed that all Variables can be accessed by at least one user.
Value	For Variables used as InstanceDeclarations, the value is server-specific; otherwise it shall represent the value described in the text.
ArrayDimensions	If the ValueRank does not identify an array of a specific dimension (i.e. ValueRank \leq 0) the ArrayDimensions can either be set to null or the Attribute is missing. This behaviour is server-specific. If the ValueRank specifies an array of a specific dimension (i.e. ValueRank $>$ 0) then the ArrayDimensions Attribute shall be specified in the table defining the Variable.
Historizing	The value for the Historizing Attribute is server-specific.
AccessLevelEx	If the AccessLevelEx Attribute is provided, it shall have the bits 8, 9, and 10 set to 0, meaning that read and write operations on an individual Variable are atomic, and arrays can be partly written.

297 5.3.3.4 VariableTypes

298 For all **VariableType** specified in this specification, the *Attributes* named in Table 6
 299 shall be set as specified in the table. The definitions for the *Attributes* can be found in [UA
 300 Part 03].

Table 6: Common VariableTypes Attributes

Attribute	Value
Value	Optionally a server-specific default value can be provided.
ArrayDimensions	If the ValueRank does not identify an array of a specific dimension (i.e. ValueRank \leq 0) the ArrayDimensions can either be set to null or the Attribute is missing. This behaviour is server-specific. If the ValueRank specifies an array of a specific dimension (i.e. ValueRank $>$ 0) then the ArrayDimensions Attribute shall be specified in the table defining the VariableType.

301 5.3.3.5 Methods

302 For all **Methods** specified in this specification, the *Attribute* named in Table 7 shall be
 303 set as specified in the table. The definitions for the *Attributes* can be found in [UA Part
 304 03].

Table 7: Common Method Attributes

Attribute	Value
Executable	All Methods defined in this specification shall be executable (Executable Attribute set to “True”), unless it is defined differently in the Method definition.
UserExecutable	The value of the UserExecutable Attribute is server-specific. It is assumed that all Methods can be executed by at least one user.

305 **6 Introduction to MTConnect and OPC UA**

306 **6.1 MTConnect**

307 MTConnect is a data and information exchange standard based on a data dictionary of
 308 terms describing information associated with manufacturing operations. The standard also
 309 defines a series of semantic data models that provide a clear and unambiguous represen-
 310 tation of how that information relates to a manufacturing operation. The MTConnect
 311 Standard has been designed to enhance the data acquisition capabilities from equipment
 312 in manufacturing facilities, expand the use of data-driven decision making in manufactur-
 313 ing operations, and enable software applications and manufacturing equipment to move
 314 toward a plug-and-play environment to reduce the cost of integration of manufacturing
 315 software systems. The MTConnect standard supports two primary communications meth-
 316 ods - Request/Response and Publish/Subscribe. Although the MTConnect Standard has
 317 been defined for manufacturing, it can also be readily applied to other application areas.

318 The MTConnect Standard is an open, royalty free standard - meaning that it is available
 319 for anyone to download, implement, and utilize in software systems at no cost. The se-
 320 mantic data models defined in the MTConnect standard provide the information required
 321 to fully characterize data with both a clear and unambiguous meaning and a mechanism to
 322 directly relate that data to the manufacturing operation where the data originated. With-
 323 out a semantic data model, client software applications must apply an additional layer of
 324 logic to convey as much meaning. The MTConnect modeling approach allows applica-
 325 tions to easily interpret data from a wide variety of data sources, reducing complexity and
 326 development effort. Where the data dictionary and semantic data models are insufficient,
 327 MTConnect can be extended with additional data items and information models.

328 MTConnect is designed to maximize interoperability with other standards, applications,
 329 and manufacturing equipment, and uses a variety of other standards to do so. Examples in
 330 the standard are based on Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) for transport protocol and
 331 XML for representing semantic data models. The transport protocol and the programming
 332 language used to represent or transfer the information provided by the semantic data mod-
 333 els are not restricted in the standard, although there is a minimum requirement to support
 334 HTTP Representational State Transfer (REST) protocol and XML. Other protocols and
 335 programming languages may be used to represent the semantic models and/or transport

336 the information provided by these data models between an MTConnect *Agent* (server) and
337 a client software application.

338 The standard was initially sponsored by AMT in 2008. AMT formed the MTConnect
339 Institute in 2011 to further standard development and engage a wider community. The
340 role of the Institute is to support the continued development of the standard and to expand
341 the deployment of MTConnect compliant technologies throughout industry. The Institute
342 has over 250 member companies world-wide.

343 **6.1.1 Data Dictionary**

344 The Data Dictionary defines a consistent set of terms that are used to describe information
345 and data gathered from shop floor operations. When various pieces of equipment publish
346 information using this common Data Dictionary, that data is easier to understand and can
347 be used directly for further analysis without requiring additional manipulation to get the
348 data into a common format. By utilizing the Data Dictionary, equipment can now publish
349 data that this "self-describing" - meaning the data not only provides values, but also pro-
350 vides essential meaning for the data; including units, tag names, scaling information, and
351 any other information that may be needed for a software application to fully understand
352 both the meaning of the data and the relevance of that data to the manufacturing process.
353 The users of this data no longer have to define this information each place the data is used.

354 **6.1.2 Semantic Data Models**

355 The Semantic Data Models defined in the MTConnect Standard are used to further en-
356 hance the meaning of the information published from equipment. These models are used
357 to represent the physical and logical configuration for a piece of equipment and the corre-
358 lation between each piece of data and the part or function in the piece of equipment that
359 the data is most closely related.

360 The data reported by the machines is defined and organized based on the semantic Data
361 Models defined in the MTConnect Standard.

362 Historically, significant configuration work was required to qualify every piece of data
363 collected by giving it an identity; scaling it to common units, when required; and to char-
364 acterize that data with whatever additional information was necessary to define the full
365 meaning of the data. This same process for qualifying the data had to be replicated for
366 every software application that needed to use this data.

367 When data is available directly from shop floor equipment that is fully qualified with an
368 identity and all the additional information that is needed to interpret that data, software
369 applications can be deployed more quickly and at a lower cost.

370 Structured semantic data provides a solid foundation that allows software implementers to
371 focus more of their energies and time on enhanced analysis and decision making instead
372 of constantly manipulating raw data into a usable form - reducing the time and effort to
373 deploy and maintain software systems.

374 In an MTConnect compliant system, configuration management of a data collection sys-
375 tem is virtually eliminated since data definition and transformation occurs at the piece of
376 equipment. When changes occur, those changes can be automatically detected by the client
377 software application(s) since each piece of equipment can publish its current configuration
378 containing all semantics and data types.

379 **6.1.3 Fundamentals of MTConnect**

380 The MTConnect Standard is built upon other communications and software standards that
381 are already heavily used in manufacturing facilities - HTTP, Ethernet, and XML.

382 Pieces of equipment publish information to an MTConnect *Agent*. Software applications
383 request information relating to a piece of equipment by making an HTTP Request. The
384 *Agent* responds to that request by publishing a MTConnect Response Document which is
385 a text document encoded using XML.

386 By leveraging already existing standards, implementers of software solutions utilizing MT-
387 Connect have immediate access to a maximum number of software tools for creating and
388 deploying software solutions. This also positions MTConnect for the highest level of in-
389 teroperability with other standards, software applications, and equipment used throughout
390 manufacturing operations.

391 MTConnect is implemented as a read-only communications solution. This means that a
392 software application can read information from a piece of equipment, but it cannot write
393 information directly to that equipment or cause the equipment to perform any specific
394 actions. This is especially relevant as industrial internet and cyber physical systems' safety
395 issues become more important. The read-only feature also makes the MTConnect Standard
396 easier for integrators to implement.

397 Many manufacturing activities require a piece of equipment to initiate a specific action or
398 function based on decisions or information from other pieces of equipment, software sys-
399 tems, or human intervention. MTConnect addresses this scenario through the Interfaces
400 Interaction Model (MTConnect Part 5.0 [MTConnect Part 5.0]). This interaction model
401 defines a standard methodology for pieces of equipment to directly exchange information
402 without any one piece of equipment writing data or instructions to the other piece of equip-
403 ment. This interaction model is commonly referred to as Read-Read where one piece of
404 equipment Requests an action or activity to be performed, and the other piece of equip-
405 ment "Reads" this requirement and independently decides how and when to Respond to
406 that Request.

407 The central component of every MTConnect System is an MTConnect *Agent*. The agent
 408 provides the critical link between a piece of equipment and client software applications.
 409 The *Agent* performs several tasks within an MTConnect System. The two major functions
 410 provided by the *Agent* are the collection, organization, and storage of data published from
 411 one or multiple pieces of equipment and to then respond to requests for this data from
 412 client software applications.

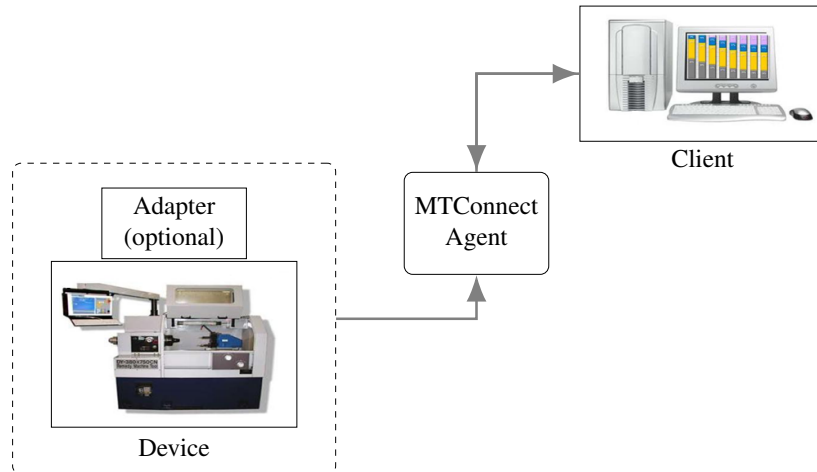


Figure 1: MTConnect Architecture Overview

413 In an MTConnect system, the term "*a piece of equipment*" can represent any intelligent
 414 data source that can produce data. Traditionally, a piece of equipment is thought of as
 415 a machine. However, a piece of equipment can also be a computer, an intelligent sensor
 416 system, a data base, and any number of other sources of data.

417 Some pieces of equipment require an Adapter which transforms data from its native form
 418 into MTConnect specific terms, and then publish that data to an MTConnect Agent.

419 6.2 Introduction to OPC Unified Architecture

420 OPC UA is an open and royalty free set of standards designed as a universal communi-
 421 cations protocol. While there are numerous communication solutions available, OPC UA
 422 has key advantages:

- 423 • A state of art security model (see [UA Part 02]).
- 424 • A fault tolerant communication protocol.
- 425 • An information modeling framework that allows application developers to represent
 426 their data in a way that makes sense to them.

427 OPC UA has a broad scope which delivers for economies of scale for application develop-
428 ers. This means that a larger number of high quality applications at a reasonable cost are
429 available. When combined with powerful semantic models such as MTCConnect, OPC UA
430 makes it easier for end users to access data via generic commercial applications.

431 The OPC UA model is scalable from small devices to enterprise resource planning (ERP)
432 systems. OPC UA devices process information locally and then provide that data in a con-
433 sistent format to any application requesting data - ERP, manufacturing execution system
434 (MES), Production Management System (PMS), Maintenance Systems, Human Machine
435 Interface (HMI), Smartphone or a standard Browser, for examples. For a more complete
436 overview see [UA Part 01].

437 **6.2.1 Basics of OPC UA**

438 As an Open Standard, OPC UA is based on standard Internet technologies - Transmission
439 Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP), HTTP and Web Sockets.

440 As an Extensible Standard, OPC UA provides a set of services (see [UA Part 04]) and a
441 basic information model framework. This framework provides an easy manner for creating
442 and exposing vendor defined information in a standard way. More importantly all OPC
443 UA Clients are expected to be able to discover and use vendor defined information. This
444 means OPC UA users can benefit from the economies of scale that come with generic
445 visualization and historian applications. This specification is an example of an OPC UA
446 Information Model designed to meet the needs of developers and users.

447 OPC UA Clients can be any consumer of data from another device on the network to
448 browser base thin clients and ERP systems. The full scope of OPC UA applications are
449 shown in Figure 2.

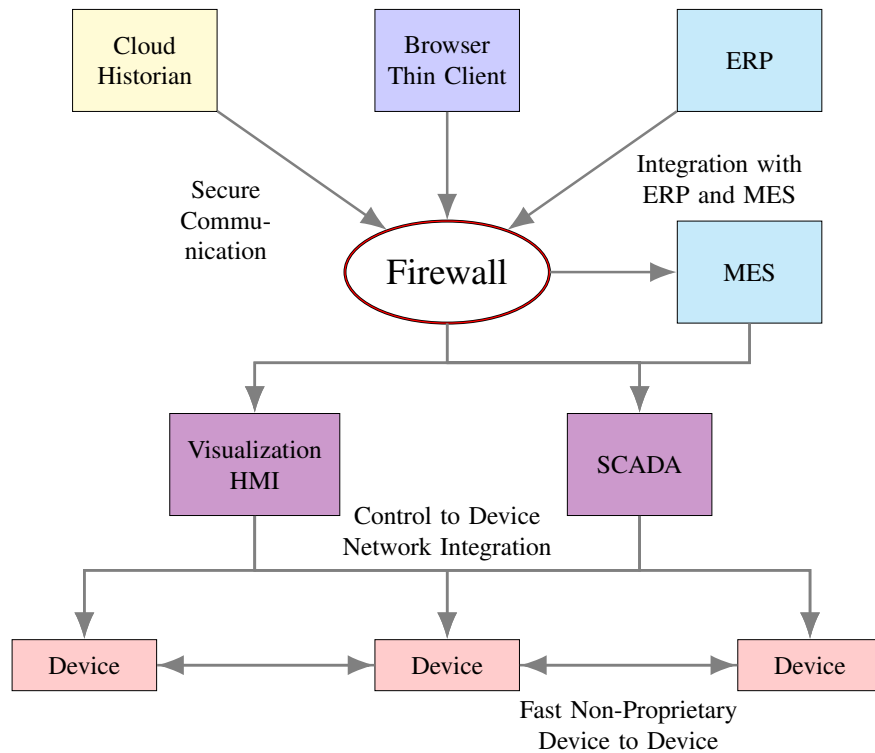


Figure 2: The Scope of OPC UA within an Enterprise

450 OPC UA provides a robust and reliable communication infrastructure having mechanisms
 451 for handling lost messages, failover, heartbeat, etc. With its binary encoded data, it offers
 452 a high-performing data exchange solution. Security is built into OPC UA as security re-
 453 quirements become more and more important especially since environments are connected
 454 to the office network or the internet and attackers are starting to focus on automation sys-
 455 tems.

456 6.2.2 Information Modeling in OPC UA

457 6.2.2.1 Concepts

458 OPC UA provides a framework that can be used to represent complex information as
 459 Objects in an AddressSpace which can be accessed with standard services. These
 460 Objects consist of *Nodes* connected by References. Different classes of Nodes convey
 461 different semantics. For example, a *Variable* Node represents a value that can be read or
 462 written. The Variable Node has an associated **Data Type** that can define the actual
 463 value, such as a string, float, structure etc. It can also describe the Variable value as a
 464 variant. A Method Node represents a function that can be called. Every Node has a number
 465 of Attributes including a unique identifier called a NodeId and non-localized name
 466 called as **BrowseName**. An Object representing a Reservation is shown in Figure

467 3.

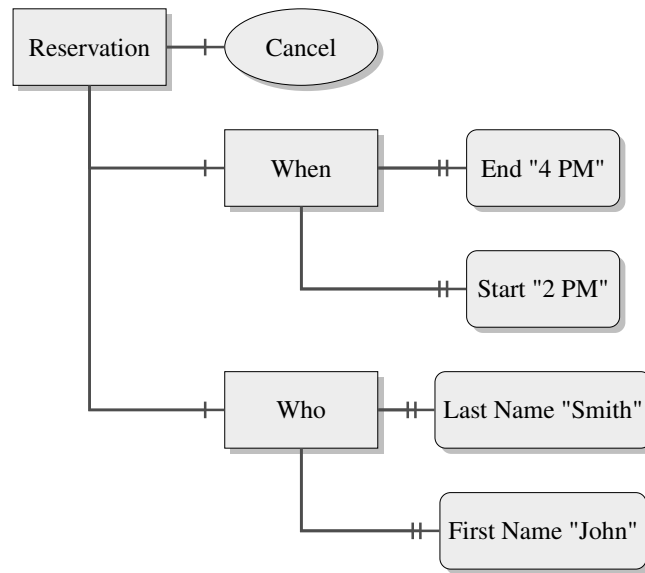
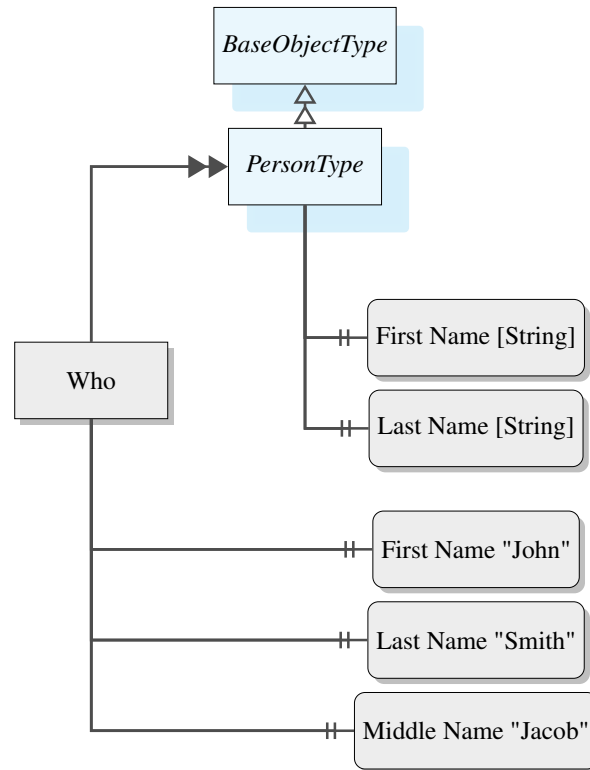


Figure 3: A Basic Object in an OPC UA Address Space

468 Object and Variable Nodes are called Instance Nodes and they always refer-
 469 ence a Type Definition (ObjectType or VariableType) Node which describes their
 470 semantics and structure. Figure 4 illustrates the relationship between an Instance and its
 471 Type Definition.

472 The Type Nodes are templates that define all of the children that can be present in an In-
 473 stance of the Type. In the example in Figure 4 the PersonType ObjectType defines
 474 two children: First Name and Last Name. All instances of PersonType are expected to
 475 have the same children with the same **BrowseNames**. Within a Type the **BrowseNames**
 476 uniquely identify the child. This means Client applications can be designed to search for
 477 children based on the **BrowseNames** from the Type instead of NodeIds. This elimi-
 478 nates the need for manual reconfiguration of systems if a Client uses Types that multiple
 479 devices implement.

480 OPC UA also supports the concept of sub typing. This allows a modeler to take an existing
 481 Type and extend it. There are rules regarding sub typing defined in [UA Part 03], but in
 482 general they allow the additions to a given type or the restriction of a **Data Type** to a more
 483 specific data type. For example the modeler may decide that the existing ObjectType
 484 in some cases needs an additional variable. The modeler can create a subtype of the
 485 ObjectType and add the variable. A client that is expecting the parent type can treat the
 486 new ObjectType as if it was of the parent ObjectType and just ignore the additional
 487 variable. A client that understands the new subtype may display or otherwise process the
 488 additional variable. With regard to **DataTypes**, if a variable is defined to have a numeric
 489 value, a sub type could restrict the Value to a float.



An instance of PersonType represents a human

Figure 4: The Relationship between Type Definitions and Instances

490 References allow Nodes to be connected together in ways that describe their relation-
 491 ships. All References have a ReferenceType that specifies the semantics of the rela-
 492 tionship. References can be hierarchical or non-hierarchical. Hierarchical references are
 493 used to create the structure of Objects and Variables. Non-hierarchical are used to create
 494 arbitrary associations. Applications can define their own ReferenceType by creating
 495 Subtypes of the existing ReferenceType. Subtypes inherit the semantics of the
 496 parent but may add additional restrictions. Figure 5 and Figure 6 depict several references
 497 connecting different Objects.

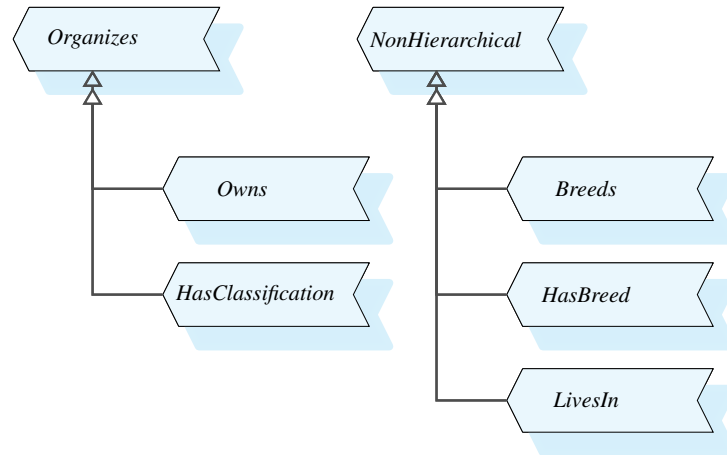


Figure 5: Reference Types from other Reference Types

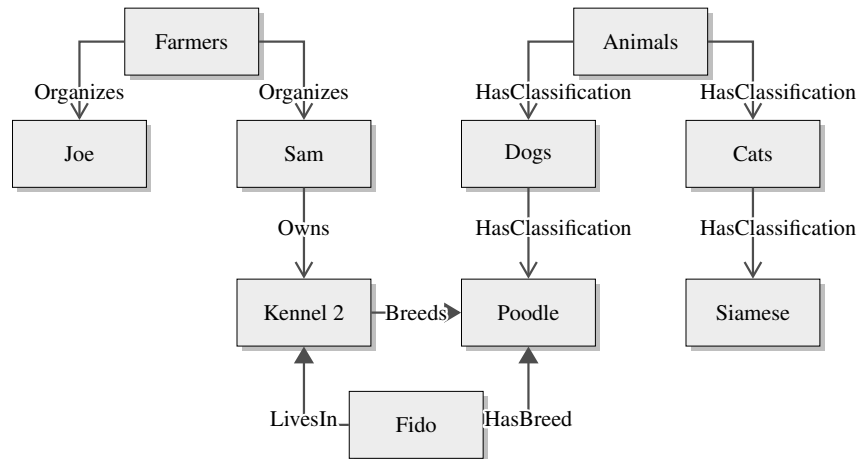


Figure 6: References showing hierarchies and/or relationships

498 The figures above use a notation that was developed for the OPC UA specification. The
 499 notation is summarized in Figure 7 and Figure 8 . UML representations can also be used;
 500 however, the OPC UA notation is less ambiguous because there is a direct mapping from
 501 the elements in the figures to **Node** in the AddressSpace of an OPC UA Server.

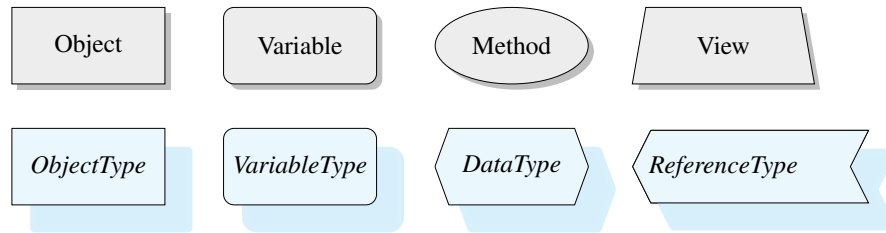


Figure 7: The OPC UA Information Model Notation for Types and Instances

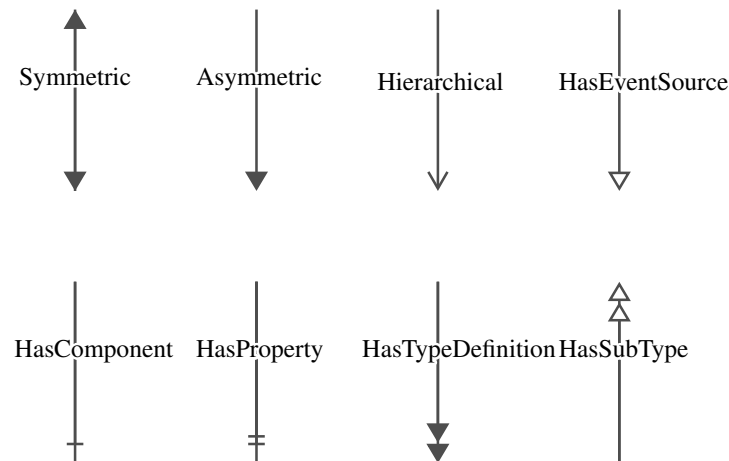


Figure 8: The OPC UA Standard References

502 A complete description of the different types of *Nodes* and *References* can be found
 503 in [UA Part 03] and the base structure is described in [UA Part 05]. OPC UA specification
 504 defines a very wide range of functionality in its basic information model. It is not expected
 505 that all clients or servers support all functionality in the OPC UA specifications. OPC UA
 506 includes the concept of profiles, which segment the functionality into testable certifiable
 507 units. This allows the development of companion specification (such as MTConnect-OPC
 508 UA) that can describe the subset of functionality that is expected to be implemented. The
 509 profiles do not restrict functionality, but generate requirements for a minimum set of func-
 510 tionality (see [UA Part 07])

511 6.2.2.2 Namespaces

512 OPC UA allows information from many different sources to be combined into a single
 513 coherent address space. *Namespaces* are used to make this possible by eliminating
 514 naming and id conflicts between information from different sources. *Namespaces* in
 515 OPC UA have a globally unique string called a *NamespaceUri* and a locally unique
 516 integer called a *NamespaceIndex*. The *NamespaceIndex* is only unique within the
 517 context of a *Session* between an OPC UA Client and an OPC UA Server. All of the web
 518 services defined for OPC UA use the *NamespaceIndex* to specify the *Namespace* for
 519 qualified values.

520 There are two types of values in OPC UA that are qualified with Namespaces: `NodeIds`
521 and `QualifiedNames`. `NodeIds` are globally unique identifiers for Nodes. This
522 means the same Node with the same `NodeId` can appear in many Servers. This, in turn,
523 means Clients can have built in knowledge of some Nodes. OPC UA Information Models
524 generally define globally unique `NodeIds` for the `TypeDefinitions` defined by the
525 Information Model.

526 `QualifiedNames` are non-localized names qualified with a `Namespace`. They are
527 used for the `BrowseNames` of Nodes and allow the same Names to be used by different
528 information models without conflict. The `BrowseName` is used to identify the children
529 within a `TypeDefinitions`. Instances of a `TypeDefinition` are expected to have
530 children with the same `BrowseNames`. `TypeDefinitions` are not allowed to have
531 children with duplicate `BrowseNames`; however, Instances do not have that restriction.

532 6.2.2.3 Companion Specifications

533 An OPC UA companion specification for an industry specific vertical market describes an
534 Information Model by defining `ObjectTypes`, `VariableTypes`, `DataTypes` and
535 `ReferenceTypes` (see section 5.2) that represent the concepts used in the vertical mar-
536 ket, and potentially also well-defined Objects as entry points into the `AddressSpace`.

537 7 Use Cases

538 MTConnect is concerned with getting semantic data or information from manufacturing
539 systems so it can be analyzed and communicated to other pieces of equipment in the
540 ecosystem. The goal of MTConnect is to provide the data in a way that can enable other
541 systems to create value for the manufacturing industry.

542 The use cases examine the architecture from the perspective of multiple personae and
543 how the MTConnect domain model enables technology that addresses their requirements.
544 There are numerous use cases for MTConnect; many that do not exist because the ecosys-
545 tem is not mature enough to support those use cases. The design of the semantic model en-
546 visioned the need for extensibility and new manufacturing processes that were not widely
547 available when MTConnect began. The model in OPC UA is also extensible and will be
548 able to track the evolution of MTConnect. As well, as OPC UA advances, MTConnect
549 will revise to make use of the latest capabilities like publish/subscribe.

550 What follows is a non-exhaustive list of use cases illustrating the benefits of the MT-
551 Connect domain-specific semantic information model when integrated with the OPC UA
552 communication and information modeling framework to increase the community of users
553 by leveraging the achievements of both standards bodies.

554 **7.1 Machine Tool Manufacturer with Existing MTConnect Im-**
 555 **plementation**

556 Figure 9, illustrates the use case for a manufacturer of a piece of equipment (device) that
 557 needs to connect to other systems. OPC UA provides the communication platform, and
 558 the MTConnect semantics provide meaning and structure to device data. Figure 9 shows
 559 several clients developed for different purposes that can access information produced by
 560 the device via OPC UA.

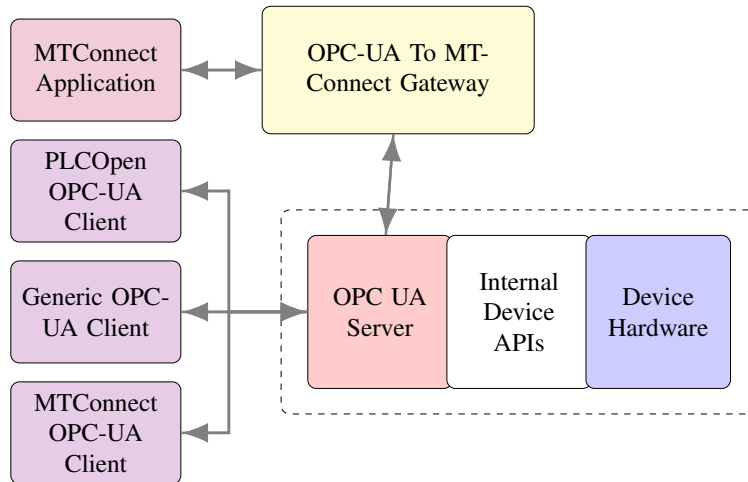


Figure 9: The Device Manufacturer Use Case

561 The MTConnect or OPC UA interface may reside directly on the machine or on a separate
 562 device that communicates with the machine. The location for the interface is up to the
 563 implementer.

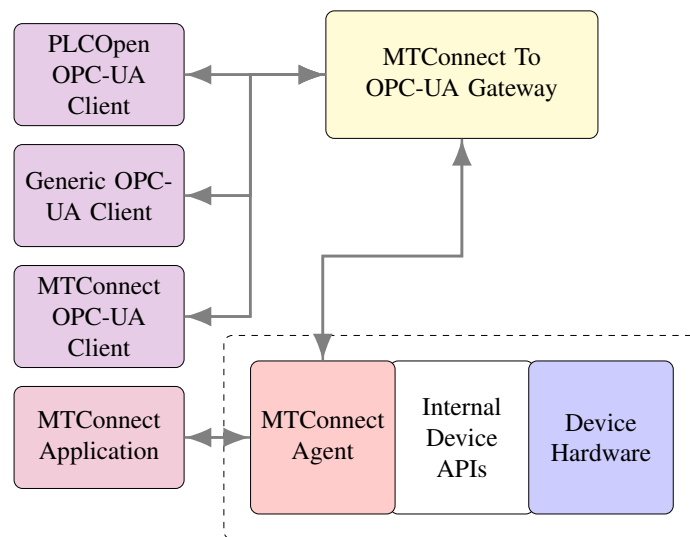


Figure 10: Device Manufacturer with Native MTConnect Agent

564 The device manufacturer may also have a native MTConnect device and make use of an
 565 MTConnect to OPC UA gateway to provide information to OPC UA clients (see Figure 10
 566 and Figure 11); this companion specification allows for information flow between clients
 567 and servers that support either MTConnect or OPC UA.

568 The benefit of providing options allows the largest number of application access to the data
 569 and enables the application developers to require the least amount of effort to ingest and
 570 analyze the data. The goal of the device manufacturer is to make their equipment capable
 571 of participating in the ecosystem of manufacturing technology that will improve the value
 572 and effectiveness of their products.

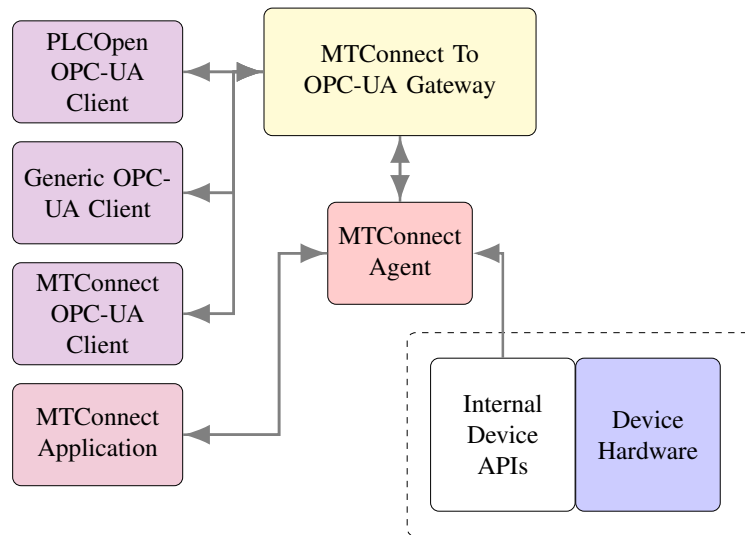


Figure 11: Device Manufacturer with Separate MTConnect Agent

573 7.2 Software Vendor

574 An Independent Software Vendor (ISV) has the principle concern of connecting to as
 575 many pieces of equipment as possible as quickly as possible. There are three aspects
 576 of interoperability that address this concern, protocol, syntactic and semantic. The first
 577 concern requires that the application can communicate to the piece of equipment using a
 578 protocol that is well understood by both the sender and receiver and widely used across
 579 the industry.

580 Protocols like HTTP, *MODBUS*, and Message Queuing Telemetry Transport (MQTT) pro-
 581 vide a level of protocol connectivity and communication with well-understood request and
 582 response formats that open and widely available. These protocols do not provide an in-
 583 formation model; they provide access to data as an undefined set of bytes that need to be
 584 interpreted by the application.

585 The next level of interoperability is syntactic. Frameworks like OLE for Process Control
 586 (OPC), Unified Modeling Language (UML), and Ontology Web Language (OWL) provide

587 a foundation with the ability to express an *ontology*, but does not provide the *ontology*
 588 itself. OPC provides a model that has been designed for the industrial domain but is
 589 generic across many verticle applications.

590 The last level is the semantic interoperability where they provide the meaning and structure
 591 of the data, the *ontology*, and allow for the information to be understood and analyzed.
 592 From an application perspective, the ability to rapidly implement solutions requires that
 593 data be well-understood with definitions for all the information so that the solution does
 594 not need to be modified for every piece of equipment.

595 Figure 12 illustrates the use case for an ISV supplying products to industrial equipment
 596 users. A typical ISV offering includes gateway(s) that convert information between MT-
 597 Connect and OPC UA and may also provide additional features required for MTConnect
 598 implementations; e.g. enhanced security features. The OPC Unified Architecture for MT-
 599 Connect Companion Specification allows the ISV to extend the MTConnect-OPC UA in-
 600 formation model with application specific constructs. These can be easily accessed via any
 601 standard OPC UA client product and will function in parallel to existing features provided
 602 by MTConnect. Figure 12 shows an ISV product that consumes data from MTConnect
 603 and OPC UA enabled devices and then makes it available via MTConnect and OPC UA.

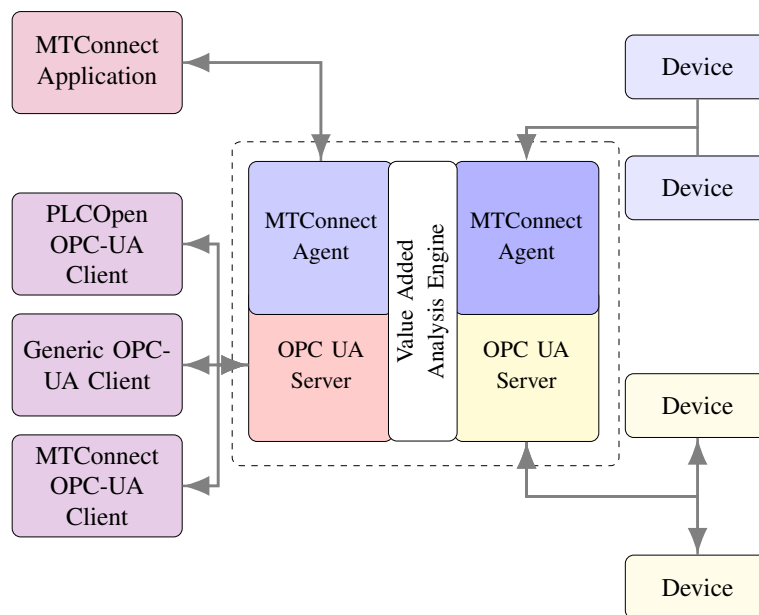


Figure 12: The Independent Software Vendor (ISV) Use Case

604 7.3 Data Scientist

605 Cloud-based analytics platforms, such as Microsoft Azure[®] Cloud provide factory con-
 606 nectivity solutions based on OPC UA for data ingest and analysis. Data Scientists, like
 607 ISVs, need semantic data that where the acquisition and categorization of the incoming

608 data do not dominate the project. The primary focus of a data scientist is to find inter-
 609 esting insights; to do so requires the information has normalized units and vocabulary so
 610 deeper correlations can be uncovered.

611 With a common information model and representations of other aspects of the manufactur-
 612 ing process that utilizes the OPC information model, such as PLC Open and ISA-95, the
 613 information can be combined with additional context to provide a better understanding of
 614 the impact on the manufacturing systems and provide more profound insights to the users.

615 7.4 Industrial Systems Integrator

616 [MTConnect Part 5.0] provides a data-centric approach to equipment integration using
 617 an observation based architecture where the devices do not instruct each other, but they
 618 observe the requests of different pieces of equipment and respond by providing the nec-
 619 essary services. The model uses MTConnect ability to publish changes to special event
 620 *DataItems* that provide a request/response framework to allow the equipment to organize
 621 activities. This is the section of the MTConnect standard referred to as *interfaces*.

622 MTConnect can benefit from OPC UA’s discovery mechanisms to incorporate devices as
 623 they enter the interactive ecosystem. UA will also increase the available equipment that
 624 can participate in the MTConnect Interfaces model by supplying a standard for advanced
 625 industrial automation without the need for additional Programmable Logic Controllers
 626 (PLCs) and expensive centralized control systems.

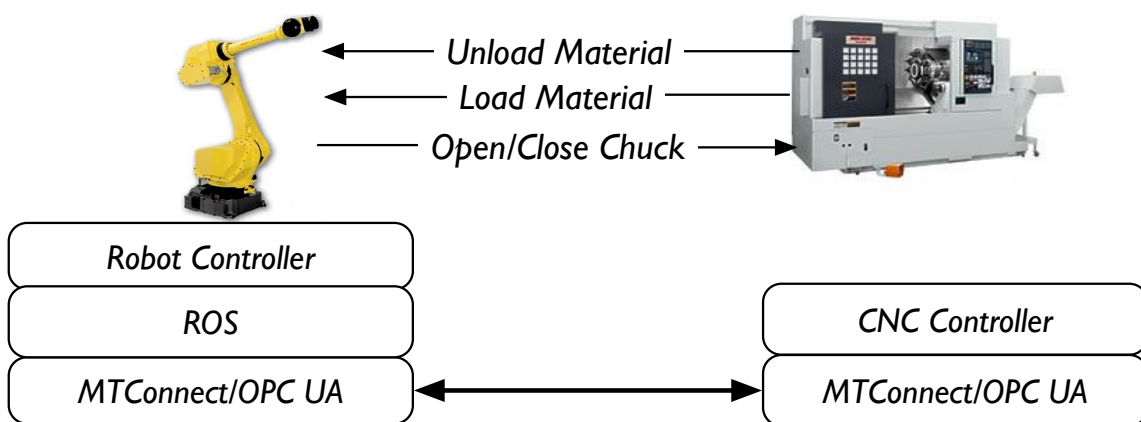


Figure 13: MTConnect OPC UA and ROS Device Integration

627 Figure 13 shows how two devices can interact without any additional components. The
 628 combination of the two standards allows for more extensive semantic interoperability be-
 629 tween equipment and applications, but also semantic interoperability between manufact-
 630 uring equipment.

631 8 Mapping the MTConnect Information Model to OPC 632 UA

633 This section describes a UML representation of MTConnect semantic data models for
634 mapping MTConnect into OPC Unified Architecture (UA). More detailed information is
635 provided in Section 9 for each data type.

636 OPC UA defines abstractions representing data, relationships, and events from devices.
637 The abstractions do not provide the semantic meaning; they provide a structure to convey
638 the meta-data and the values as they change. The OPC UA model has the base build-
639 ing blocks to represent an ontological model where the specific ontology is provided by
640 companion specification for a specific domain.

641 MTConnect has similar capabilities but uses a different structural model where the meta-
642 data and the streaming values are in separate documents to normalize the data flow in a
643 similar way that many publish-subscribe protocols separate the structure from the data.
644 MTConnect also supports a store-and-forward capability like many message brokers in a
645 Message Orienged Middleware (MOM) architecture to enable resilience and recovery of
646 data in the event of connectivity problems.

647 When translating from MTConnect to OPC UA, the MTConnect abstractions of *DataItems*
648 are converted using the OPC UA **DataVariable** abstractions as given in [UA Part 08].
649 The relationships are mapped to multiple **DataVariable** types where the category and
650 the type determine the correct mapping. Conditions are mapped a sub-type of the OPC UA
651 **ConditionType** in a similar way. The behavior of the OPC UA **Conditions** can be found in
652 [UA Part 09].

653 8.1 MTConnect UML Representation of OPC

654 This section provides instructions to translate from the OPC UA diagram representation
655 given in section 6.2 to the UML described throughout section 8. Figure 14 is a partial
656 illustration of the MTConnect *Components* abstraction in OPC UA.

657 Figure 15 represents the same model in UML. The companion specification uses the fol-
658 lowing conventions:

- 659 • OPC UA Types are represented as UML Classes
- 660 • OPC UA Objects are represented as “**BrowseName: Type**” underlined as in the fol-
661 lowing example: SimpleCnc: MTDeviceType where **SimpleCnc** is the name of the
662 device and MTDeviceType is related with a **HasTypeDefinition** relationship.
- 663 • Stereotypes are used to denote properties of types, relationships, and members of

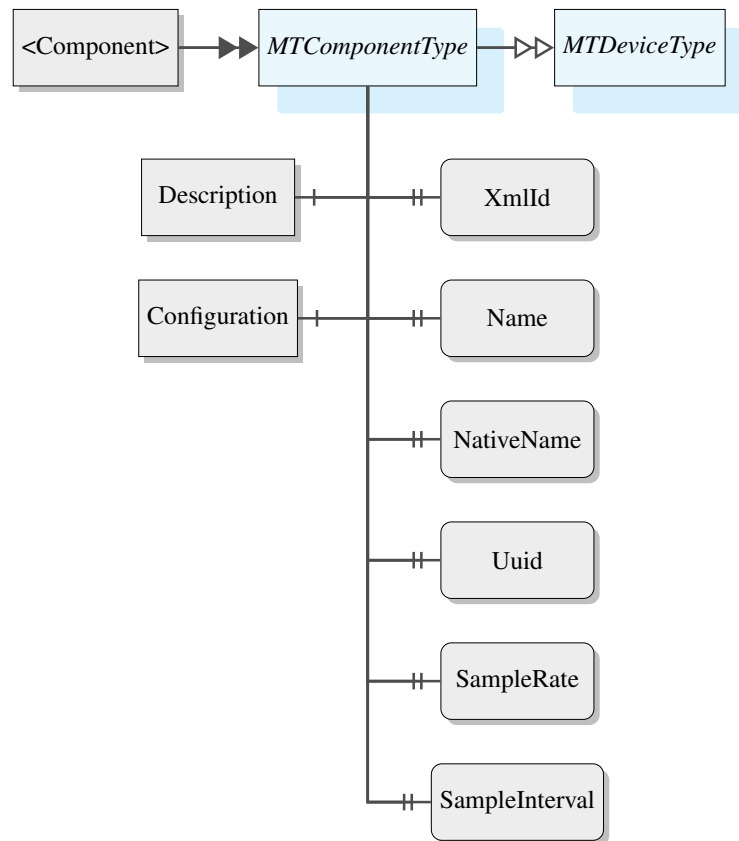


Figure 14: MTConnect MTComponentType in OPC UA

664 types. A stereotype is denoted by angle brackets (« . ») and provides additional
 665 information about the entity. For example, each reference from one *ObjectType* to
 666 another has a stereotype denoting the reference type.

- 667 • OPC UA *Properties* are denoted as UML Attributes. UA *Attributes* are also rep-
 668 resented as UML Attributes with the stereotype of «attribute» to differentiate
 669 from UA *Properties*.
- 670 • OPC UA **HasComponent References** are represented as UML Unidirectional as-
 671 sociations. The reference type is given as the association's *Stereotype*, for ex-
 672 ample «HasComponent».
- 673 • **HasSubtype** relationships are given as an UML Generalization association.
- 674 • Combining of templates and classes can be done using a UML *Realization* with
 675 the stereotype «Mixes In» to use common properties and relationships in a collection
 676 of otherwise unrelated types.

677 The *UMLAssociations* are used to represent OPC UA *References*. UA *Properties* repre-
 678 sented using the UA **HasProperty** relationships are given as UML *Attributes* (not to be
 679 confused with the OPC UA *Attribute*. UML allows for additional information as follows:
 680 the multiplicity of a property, the data type of the property, are specified.

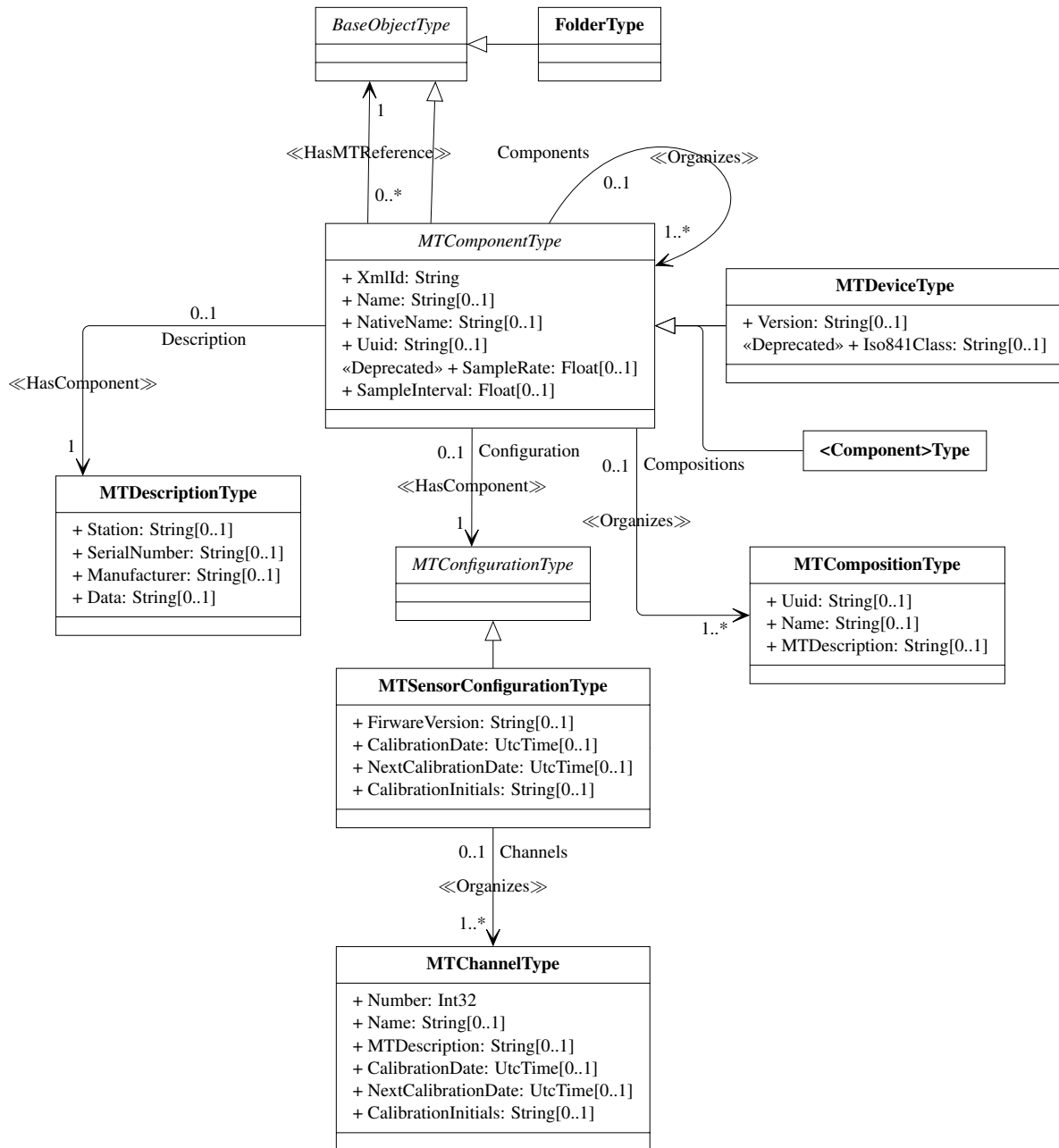


Figure 15: MTConnect MTCComponentType in UML

681 When traversing an association between two object types, the name of the source of the
 682 association is the **BrowseName** of the object, and the destination is the type of object
 683 that is instantiated. If the name is not given, it represents a dynamic relationship where the
 684 **BrowseName** is determined during the creation of the object model. An example is the
 685 association of the *MTConnect DataItems*. The rules for creating the **BrowseName** are
 686 given below in Section 8.3.1.

687 A reference that has a stereotype of **Organizes**, shown by the *Components* recursive
 688 relationship in the *MTComponentType*, implies an intermediate object of type **Fold-**
 689 **erType** with the **BrowseName** of the relationship point on the source side. The far
 690 side is not constrained within the **FolderType** but given in the documentation as the
 691 expected contents of the folder.

692 OPC UA represents both class and instance diagrams using the same set of primitives.
 693 UML provides separate class and object models using two separate sets of diagram and
 694 representations, one for classification and the other for instances of those classes. This
 695 section separates the object instantiation from the classification and uses UML object dia-
 696 grams to represent example instances of classes.

697 8.1.1 MTConnect UML Model

698 The models will use a UML representation that represents the members as UML *Slots*.
 699 There is no distinction between an attribute and a property; consult the type model for the
 700 proper associations.

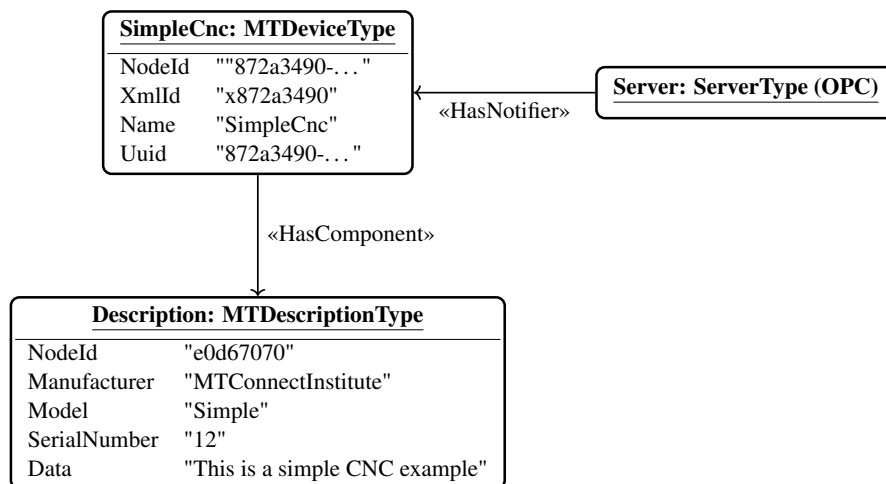


Figure 16: MTConnect Example Object

701 Figure 16 represents an *MTConnect Device* with the associated values. The UA **Browse-**
 702 **Name** is given as the object name above, and the UA Type is given after the **:** in the header.
 703 Each of the UA **Attributes** and **Properties** are provided below. Relationships are shown as
 704 edges that have the Reference Type, such as **HasComponent**. The properties contained

705 within will be created using the **HasProperty** reference but composed as internal mem-
 706 bers for brevity.

707 For example, the with type `MTDeviceType` has **BrowseName** of `SimpleCnc` (the
 708 name of the device). There are patterns for creating all the **BrowseName** for each MT-
 709 Connect UA Type. The rules are presented and in the example to provide the normative
 710 patterns for each type in the information model.

711 Common elements, like *Components* or *Compositions*, that provide structure are mapped
 712 to **FolderType** objects have common `glsBrowseNames`. These will be prefixed with
 713 the context of the parent component. For example, `Controller.Components` will
 714 refer to an *Object* of type **FolderType** with the **BrowseName** *Components*. The prefix
 715 before the period (.) will be ignored for the **BrowseName**.

716 8.2 MTConnect Information Model

717 The MTConnect information model has the following abstractions:

- 718 1. *Components*
- 719 2. *DataItems*
- 720 3. *Configuration*
- 721 4. *Compositions*
- 722 5. *Assets*

723 The first concern of the MTConnect OPC UA companion specification is the *Device* model
 724 covered in MTConnect [[MTConnect Part 2.0](#)] and [[MTConnect Part 3.0](#)]. The top-level
 725 *Component* of any MTConnect information model is the *Device*. A *Component* represents
 726 a logical part or a collection of parts of a piece of equipment. The *DataItems* represent
 727 information that is communicated from *Components*, and the representation and commu-
 728 nication of the information are covered in [[MTConnect Part 3.0](#)]. The *Compositions* are
 729 the lowest level of contextualization for MTConnect *Components* that do not have any
 730 structure but can be associated with *DataItems* to provide additional context.

731 The *Configuration* is a collection of information about the component that provides more
 732 detail about its capabilities. The standard has only specified the `SensorConfigura-`
 733 `tion` at this point.

734 *Assets* are complex information models that provide a point in time consistent set of infor-
 735 mation about the use of a physical or logical entity in the manufacturing process. These
 736 models, for example, may represent a cutting tool, a program, or a process. The *Assets*

737 will be covered in a subsequent companion specification. The only assets currently in
 738 the MTConnect standard are `CuttingTool` and `CuttingToolArchetype`. Refer
 739 to MTConnect Part 4.0 [MTConnect Part 4.0] and MTConnect Part 4.1 [MTConnect Part
 740 4.1].

741 The specification uses examples to illustrate the process of conversion from XML to OPC
 742 UA; the following sections cover the main points and concerns when converting an MT-
 743 Connect Device model to a Nodeset. Following the metamodel discussion will be a section
 744 on the handling of streaming data and mapping to the correct data items.

745 8.3 Mapping The Model

746 The MTConnect information model is represented in the UA address space as set of *Ob-*
 747 *ject* and *Variable Types*. Most have pre-existing type definitions whereas others will be
 748 created dynamically following rules in the following section. The rules provide a way for
 749 a developer of a server to extend the nodeset to include the types present in a given MT-
 750 ConnectDevices XML document as presented from an MTConnect *Agent* in response to a
 751 *probe request*.

752 8.3.1 Mapping Rules and Conventions

753 MTConnect has conventions regarding the format of elements, attributes, and values of
 754 attributes or CDATA the represent controlled vocabularies or enumerations.

755 When the rules refer to *Pascal Case*, the entity must have the following structure: The
 756 first letter of each word is capitalized and the remaining letters are in lowercase. All
 757 space is removed between letters. For example, *controller mode override* becomes `Con-`
 758 `trollerModeOverride`. The one exception is PH that remains PH.

759 The document refers to *Lower Camel Case* when the first word is lowercase and the re-
 760 maining words are capitalized and all spaces between words are removed. For example,
 761 *controller mode override* is written as `controllerModeOverride`.

762 The third form used in MTConnect is uppercase with underscores separating characters.
 763 For example, *controller mode override* is `CONTROLLER_MODE_OVERRIDE`.

764 The rules are as follows:

- 765 • XML Elements are in *Pascal Case*.
- 766 • XML Attributes are in *Lower Camel Case*

- 767 • *Controlled Vocabulary*, a fixed or enumerated set of values, for attributes or the
768 CDATA of elements are all caps with an underscore ("_") separating words.

769 When the value of an attribute, such as the data item type as given in Listing 1:

770

Listing 1: DataItem type Attribute Conversion

```
771 1 <DataItem category="EVENT" id="a8ce34a00" name="mode_ovr"  
772 type="CONTROLLER_MODE_OVERRIDE"/>  
773 2 <DataItem category="EVENT" id="b8ce34a00" name="eob" type  
774 = "END_OF_BAR"/>  
775
```

777 The type names in UA will require the upper case with underscore name to be converted
778 to *Pascal Case*. XML Attributes are converted from *Lower Camel Case* to *Pascal Case* as
779 well when mapping to UA Property **BrowseNames**.

780 OPC UA conventions use names in *Pascal Case*, so all MTConnect entities will be rep-
781 resented using *Pascal Case*. When the MTConnect entities are converted into UA types,
782 they are converted to *Pascal Case* and the word *Type* is appended.

783 The values of the attributes and enumerations are represented in MTConnect in capitals
784 with underscores. OPC UA has the same convention, so these types will remain unchanged
785 when converted to OPC UA. The only caveat is that enumerated values when represented
786 in UA **DataVariables** are numeric. All enumerations in MTConnect are sorted al-
787 phabetically and assigned monotonically increasing numeric values. For example, the
788 enumeration for the `Execution` MTConnect data item is in table 8.

Table 8: ExecutionDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
FEED_HOLD	1
INTERRUPTED	2
OPTIONAL_STOP	3
READY	4
PROGRAM_COMPLETED	5
PROGRAM_STOPPED	6
STOPPED	7

789 Extensions to the MTConnect standard with enumerations will represent the data as strings
790 since the values are not included in the address space. An extension nodeset can be created
791 by a vendor if the `MTControlledVocabEventType` is desired. The **EnumValues**
792 needs to reference the **EnumValues Attribute** of the UA **MultiStateValueDis-**
793 **creteType** and the associated indexes with the translation to the text values for map-
794 ping.

795 MTCConnect base types have been prefixed with the letters “MT” to avoid confusion with
 796 OPC UA vocabulary. The following component types and relationships have been anno-
 797 tated:

- 798 • Configuration → MTConfigurationType
- 799 • Component → MTComponentType
- 800 • Composition → MTCompositionType
- 801 • Description → MTDescriptionType
- 802 • Device → MTDeviceType
- 803 • Message → MTMessageType
- 804 • SensorConfiguration → MTSensorConfigurationType

805 The following types representing base MTCConnect types are also prefixed:

- 806 • HasMTCClassType
- 807 • HasMTSubClassType
- 808 • MTAssetEventType
- 809 • MTConditionType
- 810 • MTControlledVocabEventType
- 811 • MTNumericEventType
- 812 • MTSampleType
- 813 • MTThreeSpaceSampleType

814 The data item class types and enumeration data types do not have “MT” prepended.

815 8.3.2 Component and Composition BrowseName and Type Rules

816 The rules for determining the **BrowseName** for the MTCConnect *Component* are as fol-
 817 lows:

- 818 1. If the *Component* is *Device*, the **BrowseName** is the name attribute of the *Device*
 819 and the UA *Type Definition* is *MTDeviceType*.
- 820 2. The browse name is the QName of the XML Element of the *Component*.

- 821 3. The *HasTypeDefinition* references a type that is created by appending the word
 822 *Type* to the QName of the *Component* element. For example, a *Controller* will
 823 have a **BrowseName** of *Controller* and a **HasTypeDefinition** referencing
 824 *ControllerType*.
- 825 4. The *ObjectType* is only defined once for all *Components* of that type. There is no
 826 MT prepended to the front of the *ObjectType BrowseName*.
- 827 5. If there are two *Components* with the same **BrowseNames** or if the *Component*
 828 are *Linear* or *Rotary*, they must have the name attribute appended in square
 829 brackets ([]) to the name as specified in item 2.
- 830 6. For example, if there are two *Path Components* with names *name="P1"* and
 831 *name="P2"*, the **BrowseNames** will be as follows: *Path[P1]* and *Path[P2]*
 832 where each **HaveTypeDefinition** of *PathType*.

833 The rules for *Composition* elements are as follows:

- 834 1. *Composition* elements in the MTConnect model will be represented instantiated
 835 with the **BrowseName** of the *Composition* type converted to *Pascal Case*.
- 836 2. If two *Composition* elements of the same *Component* have the same type, they
 837 must have the name attribute appended in square brackets ([]) to the name as spec-
 838 ified in item 1.
- 839 3. For example, a component has two *type="TANK"*s with the names *name="top"*
 840 and *name="bottom"*, the **BrowseNames** will be *Tank[top]* and *Tank[bottom]*
 841 respectively.
- 842 4. The type is placed is the *MTTypeName Property*.

843 8.3.3 DataItem HasTypeDefinition and BrowseName Conven- 844 tions

845 The MTConnect *DataItem* represents multiple OPC UA **DataVariableTypes** as well
 846 as UA **ConditionTypes** as described in parts [UA Part 08] and [UA Part 09] respec-
 847 tively. The mapping rules are as follows:

- 848 1. Determine the *DataItem Type Definition* for the **HasTypeDefinition Refer-**
 849 **ence**:
- 850 • Evaluate *DataItem* attributes as follows:
 - 851 (a) If the *category* is *CONDITION*, the *Type Definition* is *MTCondi-*
 852 *tionType*.

- 853 (b) If the category is SAMPLE; apply the following rules:
- 854 i. If the type is PATH_POSITION then the **Type Definition** is MT-
- 855 ThreeSpaceSampleType.
- 856 ii. Otherwise, the UA type is MTSampleType.
- 857 (c) If the category is EVENT; apply the following rules:
- 858 i. If the type is ASSET_CHANGED or ASSET_REMOVED; the UA
- 859 **Type Definition** is MTAssetEventType
- 860 ii. Convert the type attribute to *Pascal Case* and append ClassType.
- 861 This name will be referred to as @classType.
- 862 iii. Find the MTConnect UA @classType that corresponds to the value
- 863 computed in the previous step. The types can be found in Sections
- 864 ControlledVocabDataItemTypes, NumericEventDataItem-
- 865 Types, and StringEventDataItemTypes.
- 866 iv. If the @classType matches one of the StringEventDataItem-
- 867 Types; the MTConnect UA **Type Definition** is MTStringEvent-
- 868 Type.
- 869 v. If the @classType matches one of the NumericEventDataItem-
- 870 Types; the MTConnect UA **Type Definition** is MTNumericEvent-
- 871 Type.
- 872 vi. If the @classType matches one of the ControlledVocabDataItem-
- 873 Types, the MTConnect UA **Type Definition** is MTControlled-
- 874 VocabEventType. The **EnumValues** will be assigned as follows:
- 875
- 876 Each of the **ObjectTypes** matching the @classType for Controlled-
- 877 VocabDataItemTypes will have a **Property EnumValues**. The
- 878 **EnumValues** will reference the **Enumeration** with the values of
- 879 the *Controlled Vocabulary*.
- 880 vii. Otherwise, the UA **Type Definition** is MTStringEventType. This
- 881 will apply to all extended types.
- 882 2. Assign the HasMTClassType and HasMTSubClassType **References**
- 883 (a) Convert the *DataItem* type attribute to *Pascal Case* and append **ClassType**.
- 884 Assign the target of the HasMTClassType to the **ObjectType**.
- 885 (b) Put the text name of the class in the property MTTypeName.
- 886 (c) Convert the *DataItem* subType attribute to *Pascal Case* and append Sub-
- 887 ClassType. Assign the target of the HasMTSubClassType to the **Object-**
- 888 **Type**

- 889 (d) Put the text name of the class in the property `MTSubTypeName`.
- 890 3. Format the **BrowseName** for the `Sample` and `Event DataItems`
- 891 (a) If the *DataItem* attribute `compositionId` is present, do the following:
- 892 i. Resolve the `compositionId` to the *Composition* XML element with
- 893 that `id`.
- 894 ii. Set the variable `@composition` to the *Pascal Case* of the *Composition*
- 895 attribute `type`.
- 896 Otherwise, set the variable `@composition` to "".
- 897 (b) If the `subType` is present, set the variable `@subType` to the *Pascal Case* of
- 898 the `subType`. Otherwise set it the variable `@subType` to "".
- 899 (c) Set the variable `@type` to the *Pascal Case* of the *DataItem* attribute `type`.
- 900 (d) The **BrowseName** is the concatenation of the `@composition + @subType`
- 901 `+ @type`.
- 902 (e) If the `representation` attribute is given and it has a value other than the
- 903 default `VALUE`, the **BrowseName** will be have the *Pascal Case* of the `rep-`
- 904 `resentation` appended to the **BrowseName** as specified in 3d . For exam-
- 905 ple, a `AMPERAGE` with `representation="TIME_SERIES"` will have a
- 906 **BrowseName** of `AmperageTimeSeries`.
- 907 (f) If the `statistic` is given, the *Pascal Case* of the `statistic` attribute
- 908 will be prepended to the **BrowseName** as specified in 3e. For example, if
- 909 the `statistic="AVERAGE"` for a *DataItem* of `AMPERAGE` and a repre-
- 910 sentation of `TIME_SERIES`, the **BrowseName** will be `AverageAm-`
- 911 `perageTimeSeries`.
- 912 (g) If two **BrowseNames** are identical for the same *Component*, the name must
- 913 be used to differentiate between the *DataItems* by placing the name in square
- 914 brackets (`[]`). For example, if there are two `TEMPERATURE DataItems` with
- 915 the attributes `name="front"` and `name="back"` the *DataItems* will have
- 916 the **BrowseNames** `Temperature[front]` and `Temperature[back]`
- 917 respectively.
- 918 4. Format the **BrowseName** for the *Condition DataItems*
- 919 (a) Use the name derived in the previous step for **Events** and `Samples` as spec-
- 920 ified in item 3f and append `Condition`.
- 921 (b) Apply rule specified in item 3g if two conditions have identical **Browse-**
- 922 **Names** to the result of item 4a.

923 5. The type is placed is the `MType` *Property*.

924 The examples below will provide further guidance on implementing these rules.

925 8.3.4 Mapping `MTDataItem` units to `EngineeringUnits`

926 OPC UA defines the `EngineeringUnits` `Data``Type` in [UA Part 08] as having the
927 fields show in Table 9.

Table 9: `EngineeringUnits` `Data``Type` structure

Name	Type	Description
<code>namespaceUri</code>	String	Identifies the organization (company, standards organization) that defines the <code>EUInformation</code>
<code>unitId</code>	Int32	Identifier for programmatic evaluation. -1 is used if a <code>unitId</code> is not available.
<code>displayName</code>	LocalizedText	The <code>displayName</code> of the engineering unit is typically the abbreviation of the engineering unit, for example "h" for hour or "m/s" for meter per second.
<code>description</code>	LocalizedText	Contains the full name of the engineering unit such as "hour" or "meter per second".

928 In Table 10, the mapping between the `MConnect` units and the OPC UA `EngineeringU-`
929 `nits` structure has been specified. There is one unit type, `COUNT` that is unitless and therefor
930 not mapped. The `COUNT` is only used with `Events` and therefor is not an `AnalogU-`
931 `nitType`, and is instantiated as an `MNumericEventType`.

932 The `namespaceUri` will be set to [http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/units/
933 un/cefact](http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/units/un/cefact) as specified in [UA Part 08] and the values from Table 10 must be used..

934 The `MILLIMETER_3D` unit is special since it will be represented by the `MThree-`
935 `SpaceSampleType`. The individual values of the `ThreeSpacePositionData``Type`
936 will be given in *millimeters* and a `displayName` of $mm(\mathbb{R}^3)$; the `EngineeringU-`
937 `nits` will be provided for consistency. The `EURange` will not work since it cannot
938 represent three space volumetric constraints and the `EURange` *Property* will not be cre-
939 ated.

Table 10: EngineeringUnits DataType structure

MTConnect Unit	UNECE Code	UnitId	Display Name	Description
AMPERE	AMP	4279632	<i>A</i>	Amps
CELSIUS	CEL	4408652	<i>°Celsius</i>	Degrees Celsius
COUNT				A counted event Cannot be used for EUInformation
DECIBEL	2N	12878	<i>dB</i>	Sound Level
DEGREE	DD	17476	<i>°</i>	degree [unit of angle]
DEGREE/SECOND	E96	4536630	<i>°/s</i>	Angular degrees per second
DEGREE/SECOND^2	M45	5059637	<i>°/s²</i>	Angular acceleration in degrees per second squared
HERTZ	HTZ	4740186	<i>Hz</i>	Frequency measured in cycles per second
JOULE	JOU	4869973	<i>J</i>	A measurement of energy.
KILOGRAM	KGM	4933453	<i>kg</i>	kilogram
LITER	LTR	5002322	<i>l</i>	Litre
LITER/SECOND	G51	4666673	<i>l/s</i>	Litre per second
MICRO_RADIAN	B97	4340023	<i>μrad</i>	microradian - Measurement of Tilt
MILLIMETER	MMT	5066068	<i>mm</i>	millimetre
MILLIMETER/SECOND	C16	4403510	<i>mm/s</i>	millimetre per second
MILLIMETER/SECOND^2	M41	5059633	<i>mm/s²</i>	Acceleration in millimeters per second squared
MILLIMETER_3D	MMT	5066068	<i>mm(ℝ³)</i>	A point in space identified by X, Y, and Z coordinates.
NEWTON	NEW	5129559	<i>N</i>	Force in Newtons
NEWTON_METER	NU	20053	<i>N · m</i>	Torque, a unit for force times distance.
OHM	OHM	5195853	<i>Ω</i>	Measure of Electrical Resistance
PASCAL	PAL	5259596	<i>Pa</i>	Pressure in Newtons per square meter
PASCAL_SECOND	C65	4404789	<i>Pa · s</i>	Measurement of Viscosity
PERCENT	P1	20529	<i>% or pct</i>	Percent
PH	Q30	5321520	<i>pH</i>	pH (potential of Hydrogen) - A measure of the acidity or alkalinity of a solution
REVOLUTION/MINUTE	RPM	5394509	<i>r/min</i>	revolutions per minute
SECOND	SEC	5457219	<i>s</i>	second [unit of time]

Table 11: EngineeringUnits DataType structure (Continued)

MTConnect Unit	UNECE Code	UnitId	Display Name	Description
SIEMENS/METER	D10	4469040	<i>S/m</i>	siemens per metre - A measurement of Electrical Conductivity
VOLT	VLT	5655636	<i>V</i>	volt
VOLT_AMPERE	D46	4469814	<i>VA</i>	volt - ampere
VOLT_AMPERE_REACTIVE		-1	<i>VAR</i>	Volt-Ampere Reactive (VAR)
WATT	WTT	5723220	<i>W</i>	watt
WATT_SECOND	J55	4863285	<i>W · s</i>	Measurement of electrical energy, equal to one Joule

940 8.3.5 Mapping Example

941 The following is an example of mapping the MTConnect Device Meta-Model to the OPC
 942 UA MTConnect model. The example will not be a realistic machine tool configuration,
 943 but will demonstrate all the possible combinations of components, compositions, and data
 944 items and how to construct the information model using the various rules given above. The
 945 first section covers the meta model presented in [MTConnect Part 2.0] of the MTConnect
 946 standard. For more information on any individual entity in the model, please refer to the
 947 MTConnect documentation.

948 8.3.5.1 MTConnectDevices Root Element

949 The first lines shown in Listing 2 of the MTConnect XML representation are the root
 950 element `MTConnectDevices` and the `Header` element that is used for the MTConnect
 951 protocol. The only root node concern is if there are additional name-spaces declared in the
 952 root `MTConnectDevices` element. The other area of note is the `version` attribute of
 953 the `Header` element. The version indicates the most current version of the MTConnect
 954 standard currently being provided by this *Agent*. The remaining attributes are relevant
 955 during the discussion of streaming data in the following section.

956

Listing 2: Device Header

```

957
958 1 <MTConnectDevices xmlns="urn:mtconnect.org:MTConnectDevices:1.4"
959   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xsi:
960   schemaLocation="urn:mtconnect.org:MTConnectDevices:1.4_schema
961   /MTConnectDevices_1.4.xsd">
962 2 <Header version="1.4.0" creationTime="2018-10-28T12:33:12Z"
963   instanceId="12345" sender="localhost" bufferSize="1024"
964   assetBufferSize="1024" assetCount="0"/>

```

965 3 | **<Devices>**

967 The MTConnect Agent is capable of supporting multiple *Devices*; a *Device* element is
 968 the only allowed child element of the *Devices* element. The *Device* element is the top
 969 level *Component* of the MTConnect *Component* hierarchy. The *Device* is a sub-type of the
 970 *Component* and inherits all the structure of an MTConnect *Component*. The *Device* has
 971 three required attributes, an *id*, a *uuid* and a *name* attribute. Only the *id* is mandatory
 972 in all other components.

973 **8.3.5.2 Device Element**

Listing 3: Device Element Mapping

```

974 4 <Device id="x872a3490" uuid="872a3490-bd2d-0136-3eb0-0
975   c85909298d9" name="SimpleCnc">
976 5 <Description manufacturer="MTConnectInstitute" model="
977   Simple" serialNumber="12">
978 6 This is a simple CNC example
979 7 </Description>
980
    
```

982 The *Description* element provides some characteristics of the device, namely the
 983 manufacturer, *serialNumber* and *model*. These are all optional as is the de-
 984 scriptive text that is contained in the *Description* element. The text contained in the
 985 CDATA of the *Description* element is mapped to the *Data* property of the MTDe-
 986 scriptionType instance.

987 The *Device* is mapped to an *MTDeviceType* object in the MTConnect namespace as
 988 shown in Figure 17.

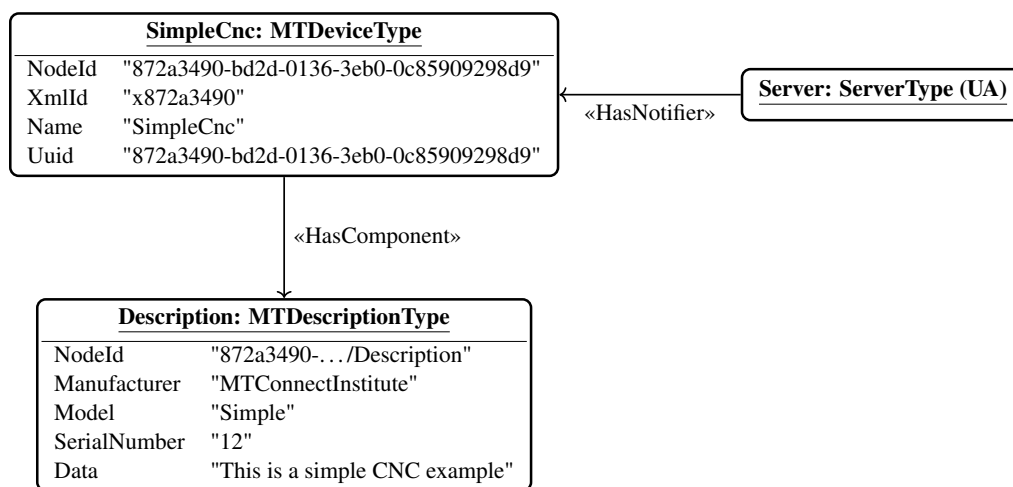


Figure 17: MTConnect Device Object

989 Every device must have a **HasNotifier** relationship with the *Server* UA Object as the
 990 source to enable conditions and event notification. The **HasNotifier** relationships are
 991 flowed down through the component hierarchy where the *Objects* each have a **HasNo-**
 992 **tifier** relationship with the parent. The MTConnect *DataItems* will have require a
 993 **HasEventSource** relationship with the parent *Component* when the *DataItem* is asso-
 994 ciated with a *Condition* where the *Source* element of the *Condition* references the
 995 *DataItem* id.

996 The treatment of the component relationships will be covered in the *DataItem* examples.

997 8.3.5.3 Device *DataItems*

Listing 4: Device Data Items

```

998
999 8      <DataItems>
1000 9      <DataItem id="d5b078a0" name="avail" type="AVAILABILITY"
1001      category="EVENT"/>
1002 10     <DataItem id="e4a300e0" type="ASSET_CHANGED" category="
1003      EVENT"/>
1004 11     <DataItem id="f2df7550" type="ASSET_REMOVED" category="
1005      EVENT"/>
1006 12     </DataItems>
  
```

1008 The device requires three data items as of MTConnect version 1.2. The AVAILABILITY
 1009 data item indicates if data is available from the device and the ASSET_CHANGED and
 1010 ASSET_REMOVED data items represent the last asset inserted or updated and removed
 1011 respectively. The Component adds Data items with a **HasComponent** relationship, and
 1012 the BrowseName is constructed using the type, subType, and related *Composition* from
 1013 compositionId if given. A complete example is given later in this section.

1014 Figure 18 demonstrates the relationship of the *DataItems* with the parent MTCompo-
 1015 nentType using a **HasComponent** relationship. The browse name is constructed to
 1016 uniquely identify the *DataItem* and also indicate its semantic meaning within the con-
 1017 text of the MTConnect *MTComponentType*, in this case, an *MTDeviceType* since the
 1018 *MTDeviceType* is a sub-type of the *MTComponentType*. These relationships are cre-
 1019 ated dynamically during the instantiation of the model and are not part of the underlying
 1020 MTConnect Nodeset.

1021 Every MTConnect *DataItem* has two references that provide the semantic meaning in the
 1022 UA address space. This model is very similar to the **ConditionClassId** relation-
 1023 ship for the OPC UA *ConditionType*. These **ClassTypes** are inherited from the same
 1024 parent so they can be used for both the **HasMTClassType** for all *DataItems* as well
 1025 as the **ConditionClassId** in *Conditions* since MTConnect *Conditions* are also
 1026 descended from the *ConditionType* hierarchy.

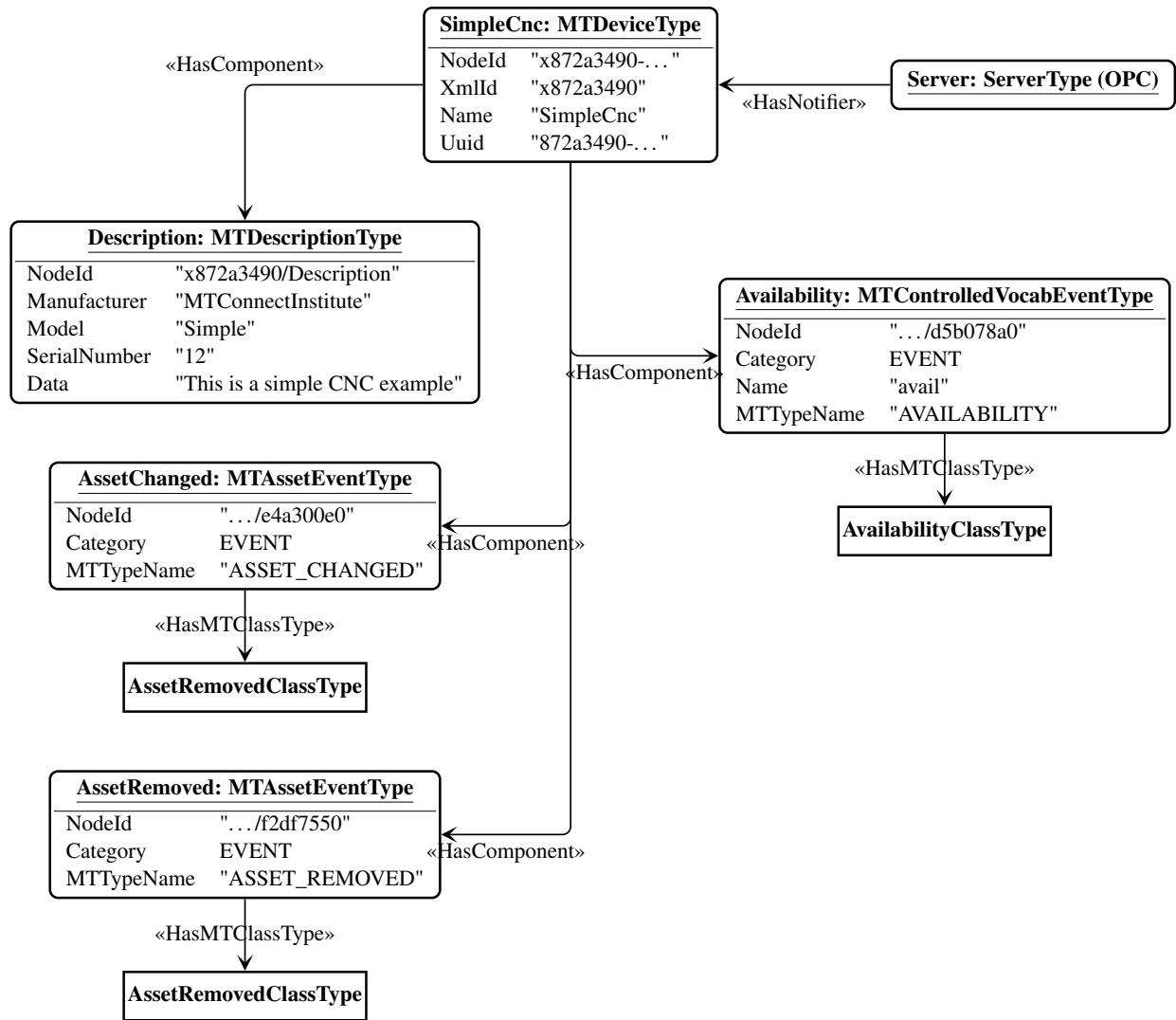


Figure 18: MTConnect Device Object with Data Items

1027 In Figure 19, the `HasMTClassType` reference indicates the semantic meaning of the
 1028 data item. For enumerated or controlled vocabulary data items, they are represented using
 1029 a sub-type of the UA **MultiStateValueDiscreteType**, the `MTControlledVocabEventType`, where the **EnumValues**
 1030 attribute is related to the `NodeId` of the associated enumeration data type, in this case the `AvailabilityDataType`. The `AvailabilityClassType`
 1031 also has **HasComponent** relationship with the `AvailabilityDataType` **Enumeration**.

1034 `MTConnect` subType will be mapped in the same manner as the type using the `HasMTSubClassType`
 1035 relationship. This will be covered subsequent examples.

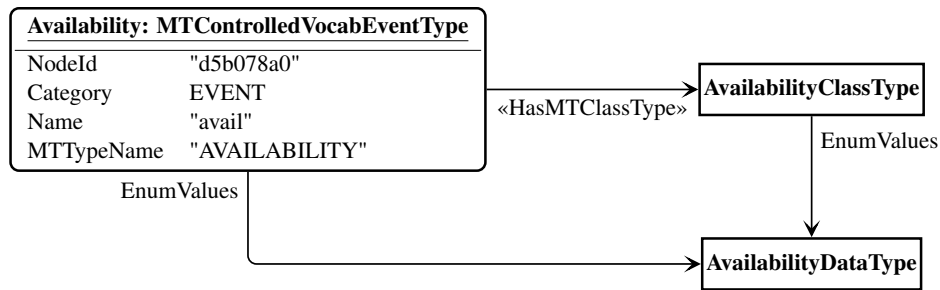


Figure 19: MTCConnect Data Item References

1036 8.3.5.4 Axes and Linear Components

Listing 5: Components and Conditions

```

1037
1038 13      <Components>
1039 14          <Axes id="a62a1050">
1040 15              <Components>
1041 16                  <Linear id="e373fec0" name="X1" nativeName="X">
1042 17                      <DataItems>
1043 18                          <DataItem id="dcbc0570" name="Xpos" type="
1044 19                          POSITION" subType="ACTUAL" category="SAMPLE" units="
1045 20                          MILLIMETER"/>
1046 21                          <DataItem id="f646f730" type="LOAD" name="Xload"
1047 22                          category="SAMPLE" units="PERCENT"/>
1048 23                          <DataItem id="e086dd60" type="POSITION" category="
1049 24                          CONDITION" name="Xtravel"/>
1050 25                      </DataItems>
1051 26                  </Linear>
  
```

1053 The *Components* element in Listing 5 is represented as a UA **FolderType**. Within the
 1054 folder, the MTCConnect components are semantically identified by the element's QName
 1055 with a type with the suffix **Type** appended, in this case the **BrowseName** *Axes* has a
 1056 **HasTypeDefinition** relation of *AxesType*.

1057 Figure 20 represents the UA Object model based on Listing 5. The *Linear X Axis*,
 1058 mapped from *Linear* element in Listing 5, has a **BrowseName** composed of the QName
 1059 of the element, and the name attribute appended and enclosed in square brackets [X],
 1060 giving the browse name of *Linear[X]* and a component type of *LinearType* using a
 1061 **HasTypeDefinition Reference**.

1062 The *DataItems* for *ActualPosition* and *Load* are both of category *SAMPLE*;
 1063 they contain numeric values are always mapped to the *MTSampleType* which is de-
 1064 rived from the UA **AnalogItemType** defined in [UA Part 08]. The **BrowseName** for
 1065 the *DataItems* are composed of the related *Composition*, *subType*, and *type* of the
 1066 *DataItem* represented in *Pascal Case*. See Section 8.3.3 for details.

1067 The *EngineeringUnits* of the *AnalogUnitType* will be mapped to the *EngineeringUnits*

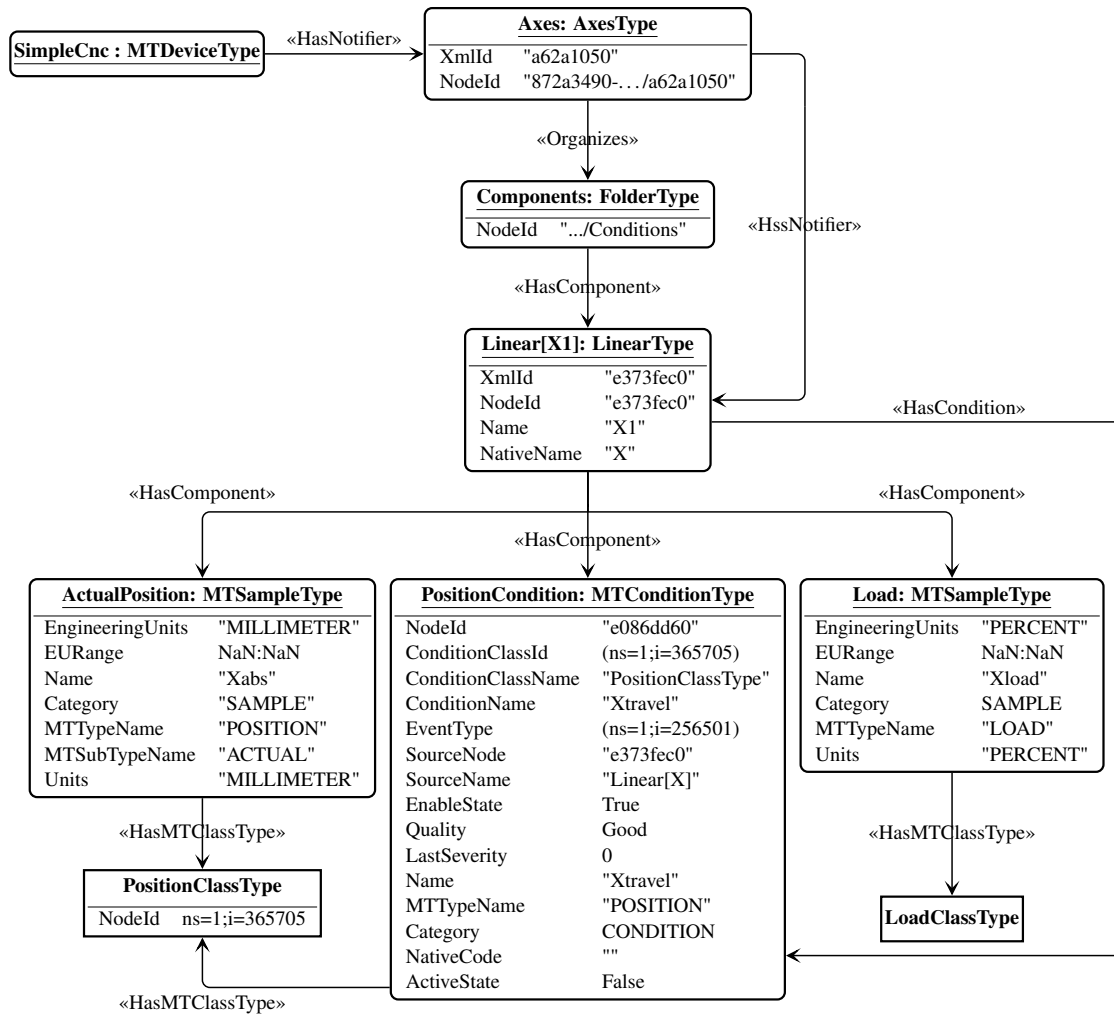


Figure 20: Linear X Axis Example

1068 **Property** of the `MTSampleType`. If the value is constrained, the *EURange* will be cre-
 1069 ated, otherwise it will not be specified. The remaining attributes will be represented as
 1070 properties of the `MTSampleType` converting the *Lower Camel Case* to *Pascal Case* by
 1071 changing the first character to upper-case. The *EVENT* category and complex cases will
 1072 be specified in the following examples.

1073 `MTConnect DataItems` of category `CONDITION` are special types since they represent
 1074 the state of an alarm or warning associated with a *Component* of the *Device*. For more
 1075 information on the *conditions* see [MTConnect Part 2.0] and [MTConnect Part 3.0]. The
 1076 mapping of the `CONDITION` category of *DataItems* is to the `MTConditionType`.

1077 The `MTConditionType` has a naming rule similar to the *DataItem* referenced above.
 1078 The same rule applies with `Condition` appended. In this case the condition is of type
 1079 `POSITION` so the **BrowseName** is `PositionCondition`. This is to differentiate the
 1080 `Conditions` from other *DataItems*.

1081 The `MTConditionType` is decendent of the **BaseEventType** described in [UA Part
 1082 05] and [UA Part 09], so it has two functions in the UA model. It represents the overall
 1083 state of the UA *Condition* and also it represents each event as the various `MTConnect`
 1084 `Condition` changes are reported as represented in the `MTConnectStreams` described
 1085 in [MTConnect Part 3.0].

1086 The **HasNotifier** reference must be created between the `SimpleCnc:MTDeviceType`
 1087 object and the `Axes` object to allow for the events to flow down to the conditions for each
 1088 of the components. The relationship of the condition in Figure 20 illustrates the relation-
 1089 ships between the `Component` and the related condition in the notification hierarchy.

1090 The `Linear[x]` component uses a **HasNotifier** reference sourced from the parent
 1091 *Axes Object*. The condition, having a `MTClassType` and a **ConditionClassId** of
 1092 `PositionClassType`, is connected to the `Linear[X]` axis with a **HasCondition**
 1093 relationship to indicate the source of the events for the *ConditionType*.

1094 8.3.5.5 Rotary Axis and Condition sources

Listing 6: Rotary C Axis

```

1095 23      <Rotary id="zf476090" name="C" nativeName="S">
1096 24          <DataItems>
1097 25              <DataItem id="bbe3f010" type="ROTARY_MODE"
1098 26                  category="EVENT">
1099 27                  <Constraints>
1100 28                      <Value>SPINDLE</Value>
1101 29                  </Constraints>
1102 30              </DataItem>
1103 31              <DataItem id="ac6b69c0" type="ROTARY_VELOCITY"
1104 32                  subType="PROGRAMMED" category="SAMPLE" units="
1105 33                      REVOLUTION/MINUTE" name="Sspeed_prg"/>
1106 34              <DataItem id="vee9c2d0" type="ROTARY_VELOCITY"
1107 35                  subType="ACTUAL" category="SAMPLE" units="
1108 36                      REVOLUTION/MINUTE" name="Sspeed_act">
1109 37                  <Constraints>
1110 38                      <Minimum>0</Minimum>
1111 39                      <Maximum>7000</Maximum>
1112 40                  </Constraints>
1113 41              </DataItem>
1114 42              <DataItem id="r1841b70" type="LOAD" category="
1115 43                  SAMPLE" units="PERCENT" name="Sload"/>
1116 44              <DataItem id="taa7a0f0" type="AMPERAGE" category="
1117 45                  SAMPLE" units="AMPERE" compositionId="
1118 46                  b7792870" />
1119 47              <DataItem id="afb596b0" type="AMPERAGE" category="
1120 48                  CONDITION" compositionId="b7792870" name="
1121 49                  Soverload">
1122 50                  <Source dataItemId="taa7a0f0"/>
1123 51              </DataItem>

```

```

1125 42      </DataItems>
1126 43      <Compositions>
1127 44          <Composition id="b7792870" type="MOTOR"/>
1128 45      </Compositions>
1129 46  </Rotary>

```

1131 The data item on Line 25 of Listing 6 with type of ROTARY_MODE is illustrated in
 1132 Figure 21. MTConnect allows for a Rotary axis to provide the function of the axis,
 1133 Spindle, Contour, or Index. In Many cases the Rotary Mode is a singular values, as in this
 1134 case when it can only work as a spindle. This is expressed by creating a **HasComponent**
 1135 reference to a MTConstraintType *Object* and specifying the **Values Property** with
 1136 the singular value of ["SPINDLE"] indicating it can only function as a spindle.

1137 In MTConnect, the value of this data item will never be UNAVAILABLE since it is bound
 1138 to a single value, it will always be present and have that value regardless of the connectivity
 1139 state to the data source. Since the value is static and never changes, the **Quality** will be
 1140 **Uncertain_SubstituteValue** if it is never provided. In the case of constraints on a
 1141 controlled vocabulary, the **Values** must always be one of the related **EnumValues**. See
 1142 [MTConnect Part 2.0] for details on the constraints and the relationship to the *DataItems*.

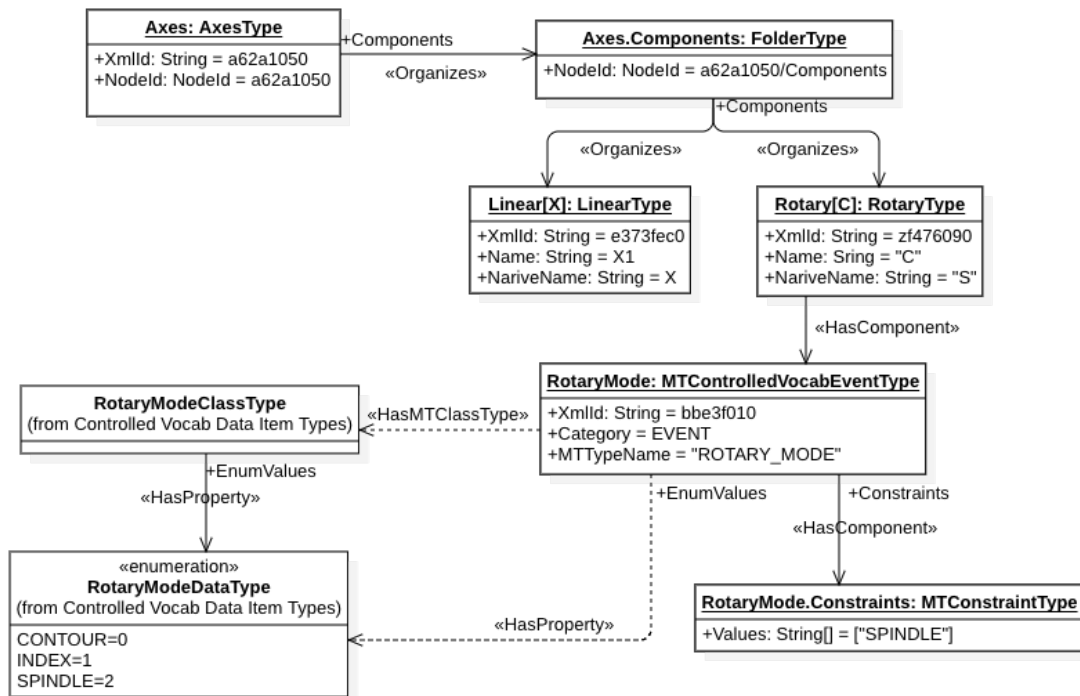


Figure 21: Rotary[C] Axis RotaryMode DataItem

1143 Figure 22 corresponds to Lines 30-36 of Figure 22—the two rotary velocity data items dif-
 1144 ferentiated by their subTypes of ACTUAL and PROGRAMMED. In this case they share
 1145 many of the same property values. The HasMTSubClassType references the Actu-

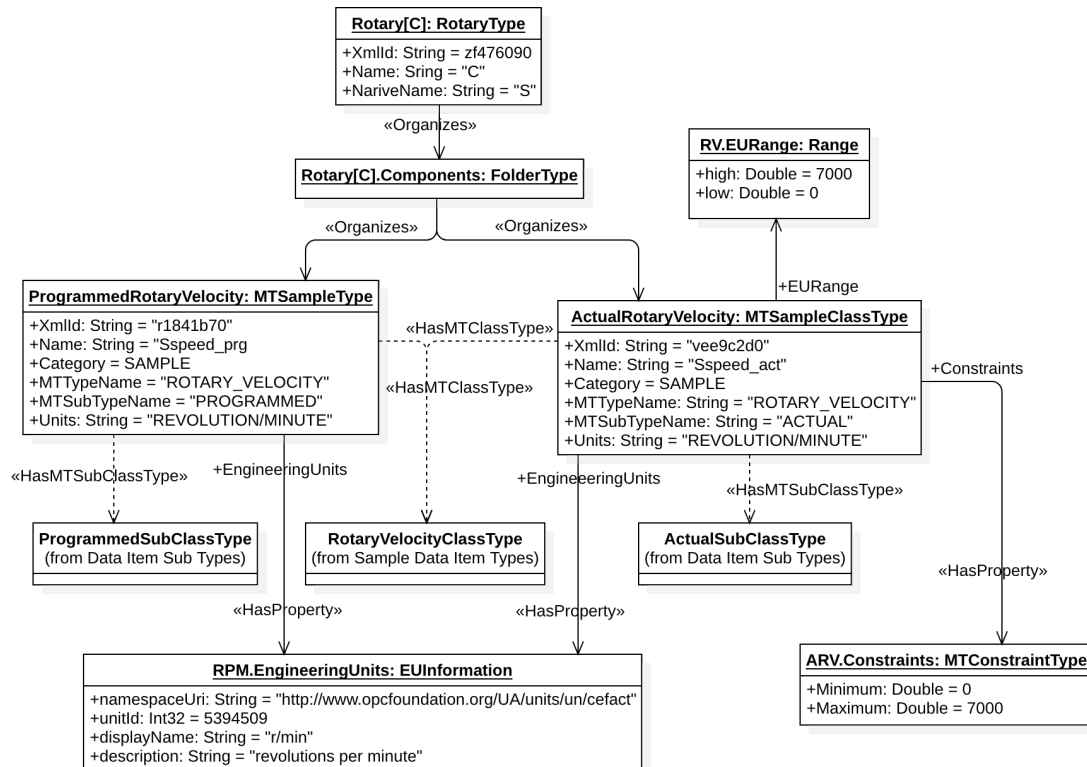


Figure 22: Rotary[C] Axis Rotary Velocity DataItem

1146 alSubClassType and the ProgrammedSubClassType respectively.

1147 In the case of the ActualRotaryVelocity object, it has an additional constraint that
 1148 specifies that the maximum spindle speed is 7000 RPM. This is given with the MTCon-
 1149 straintType.

1150 UA 1.04 Ammedment 1 [UA Amend 1] for **AnalogItem Types** provides the **Type Ana-**
 1151 **logUnitType** where the **EURange** is **Optional**. The MTSampleType will inherit
 1152 from **AnalogUnitType** instead of **AnalogItemType** as this matches the MTConnect
 1153 unit requirements.

1154 If the **Constraints** are given with both **Maximum** and **Minimum** values, then the **EURange**
 1155 will be created with **high** set to **Maximum** and **low** set to the **Minimum**, otherwise if
 1156 either are not given, the **EURange** will not be created. The ActualRotaryVelocity
 1157 references an **EURange** where the **high** and **low** are the same as the **Maximum** and
 1158 **Minimum** of the **MTConstraintType** respectively.

1159 Figure 23 represents the Load *DataItem* for Listing 6 Line 37 as an example of a MT-
 1160 SampleType with a units="PERCENT" and mapped to the **EngineeringUnits** for
 1161 **Percent**. There is no **Constraints** so the **EURange** is not provided as specified in [UA
 1162 **Part 08**].

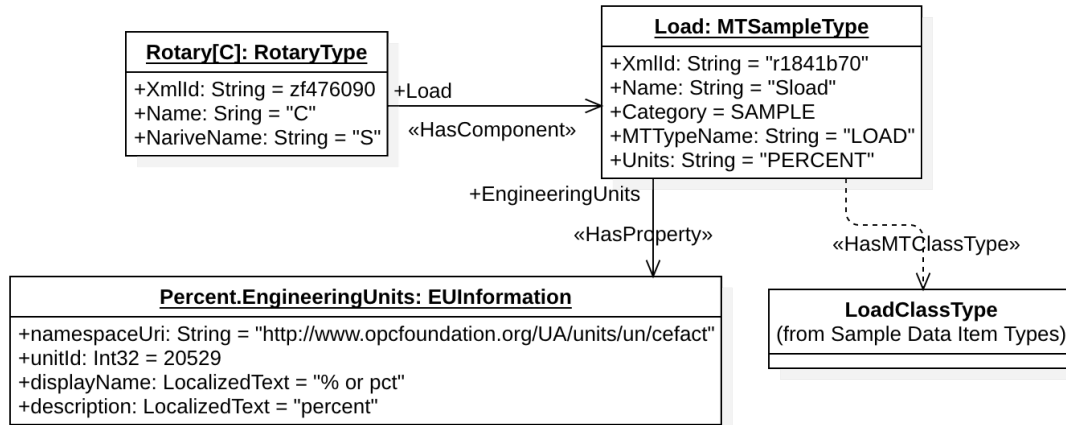


Figure 23: Rotary[C] Axis Load DataItem

1163 Figure 24 illustrates the Amperage *DataItem* corresponding to the Listing 6 Lines 38-
 1164 42. Unlike the previous example of a *MTConnect Condition* relating to the *MTCon-*
 1165 *nect Component*, the *Source* element under the *DataItem* references the *DataItem* with
 1166 type *AMPERAGE*. When the *Source* refers to a *DataItem* that is part of the same *MT-*
 1167 *Connect Component*, the *UA Variable* is given a *Reference HasEventSource* from
 1168 the *RotaryType* (*Rotary[C]*) and a *HasCondition Reference* is created between
 1169 the *Variable* to the *MTConditionType*.

1170 As stated above, the *HasNotifier References* must be established between all *Com-*
 1171 *ponents* back to the *MTDeviceType* that has a reference from the *Server*. The *Mo-*
 1172 *torAmperage* and *MotorAmperageCondition* demonstrate the naming rule where
 1173 the *Composition* type is converted to *Pascal Case* and then prepended to the *DataItem*
 1174 type.

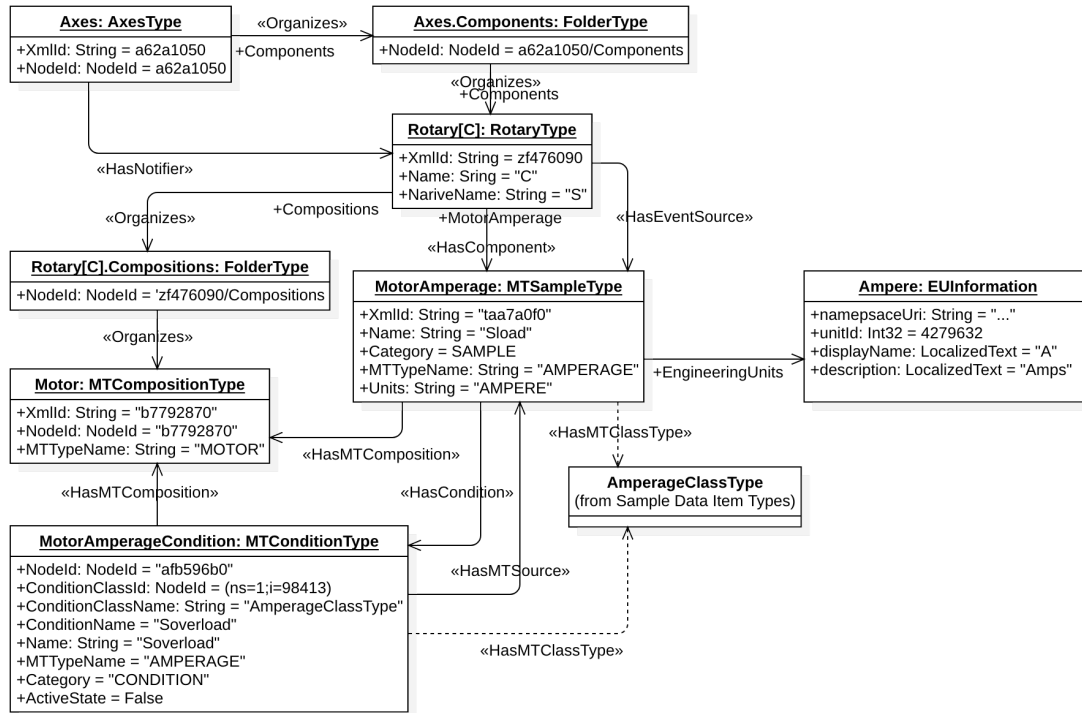


Figure 24: Rotary[C] Axis Motor Amperage DataItem

1175 **8.3.5.6 Controller and Path Components**

1176 In MTConnect, the Controller component represents the control system of the ma-
 1177 chine. This includes both the PLC and the Computer Numerical Controller (CNC) of the
 1178 machine. In a CNC machine tool, the CNC and PLC are often thought of as a single
 1179 component of the machine since they both control the operation of the machine.

1180 The MTConnect information model does not differentiate between the two controllers,
 1181 but represents them as a common controller category with data items that apply to both.
 1182 Within a controller, there can be multiple Paths, each representing a set of coordinated
 1183 motion. The Path is optional if the Controller is representing a simple machine with
 1184 a PLC and no motion, such as a boiler or oven. This is covered in MTConnect Part 2
 1185 [MTConnect Part 2.0].

1186

Listing 7: Controller and Path Components and Their Data Items

1187
 1188
 1189
 1190
 1191
 1192
 1193

```

47 <Controller id="p5add360">
48 <DataItems>
49 <DataItem id="x7ca94e0" type="EMERGENCY_STOP"
category="EVENT" name="estop"/>
50 <DataItem id="m17f1750" type="MESSAGE" category="
EVENT"/>
    
```

```

1194 51         </DataItems>
1195 52     <Components>
1196 53         <Path id="a4a7bdf0" name="P1">
1197 54             <DataItems>
1198 55                 <DataItem id="if36ff60" type="CONTROLLER_MODE"
1199         category="EVENT"/>
1200 56                 <DataItem id="a01c7f30" type="EXECUTION" category
1201         ="EVENT"/>
1202 57                 <DataItem id="k8dd9030" type="PROGRAM" category="
1203         EVENT"/>
1204 58                 <DataItem id="r63f9b10" type="
1205         CONTROLLER_MODE_OVERRIDE" subType="
1206         OPTIONAL_STOP" category="EVENT"/>
1207 59                 <DataItem id="a557d330" type="LOGIC_PROGRAM"
1208         category="CONDITION"/>
1209 60                 <DataItem id="a5b23650" type="MOTION_PROGRAM"
1210         category="CONDITION"/>
1211 61                 <DataItem id="bbafe670" type="LINE" category="
1212         EVENT"/>
1213 62                 <DataItem id="d2e9e4a0" type="PART_COUNT"
1214         category="EVENT">
1215 63                     <InitialValue>1</InitialValue>
1216 64                 </DataItem>
1217 65                 <DataItem id="r186cd60" type="PATH_POSITION"
1218         category="SAMPLE" units="MILLIMETER_3D"/>
1219 66             </DataItems>
1220 67         </Path>
1221 68     </Components>
1222 69 </Controller>

```

1224 The Controller has two DataItems, Message and EmergencyStop as shown
1225 in Figure 25. The MTMessageType is an **Variable** where the data type is a Mes-
1226 sageEventData type.

1227 Figure 26 illustrates the Path component. Many of the *DataItems* types have been cov-
1228 ered in prior examples, so the Path will only focus on the *DataItems* that have differ-
1229 entiated features. Those *DataItems* will be represented without additional properties or
1230 relations.

1231 The PATH_POSITION is mapped to the MTThreeSpaceSampleType that represents
1232 a spacial coordinate in three space (\mathbb{R}^3) with each coordinate given in millimeters. The
1233 **EngineeringUnits** for this type will therefor always be mapped to **MMT** in the **UNECE**
1234 conventions.

1235 The MTThreeSpaceSampleType uses the ThreeSpacePositionDataType that
1236 contains an **X, Y, and Z Field**. If one of the dimensions cannot be provided, it must be
1237 set to **NaN**.

1238 The two Conditions in this component capable of branching. The model will use the
1239 **BranchId** in this case. This occurs when there are multiple simultaneous problems with

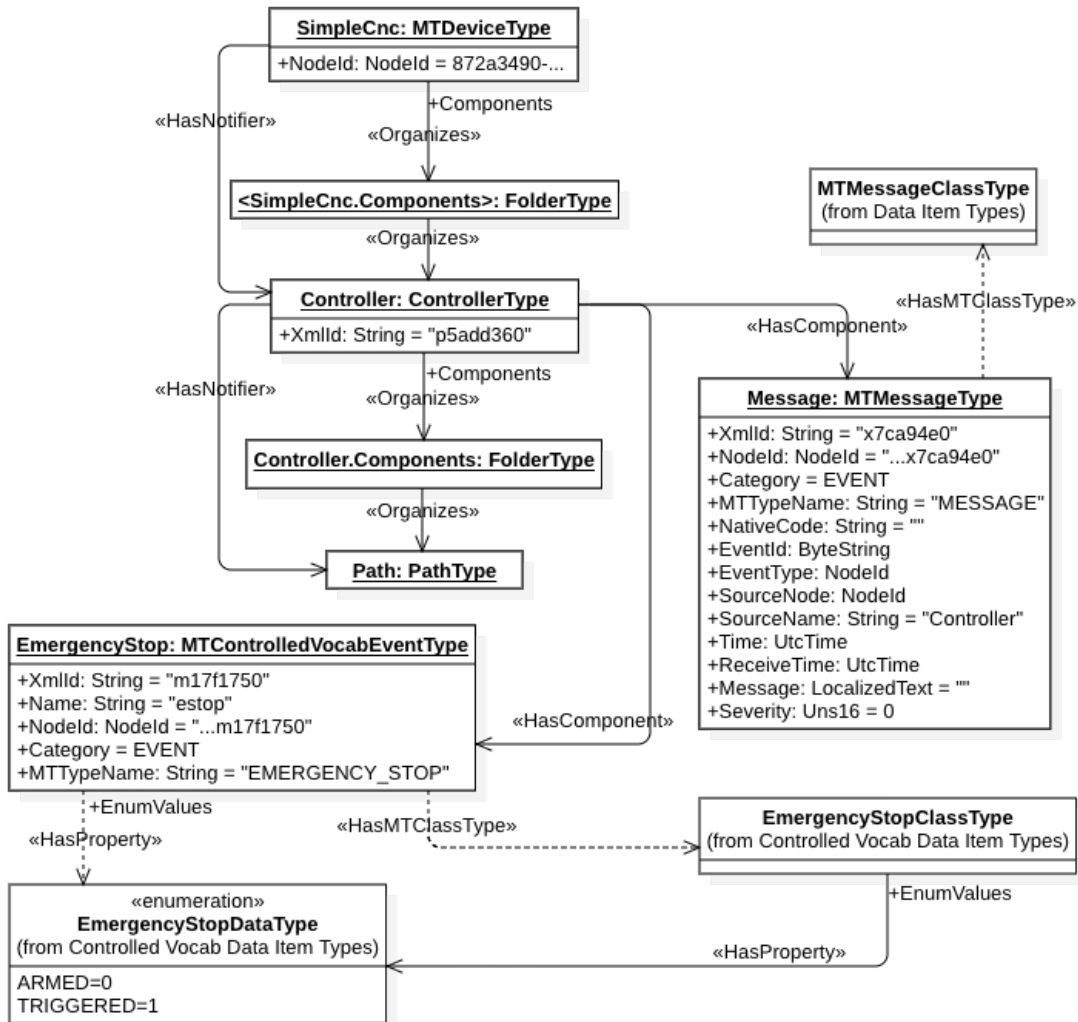


Figure 25: Controller Component and Data Items

1240 either the logic or motion program in the controller. These cases will be discussed in the
 1241 section on the streaming data.

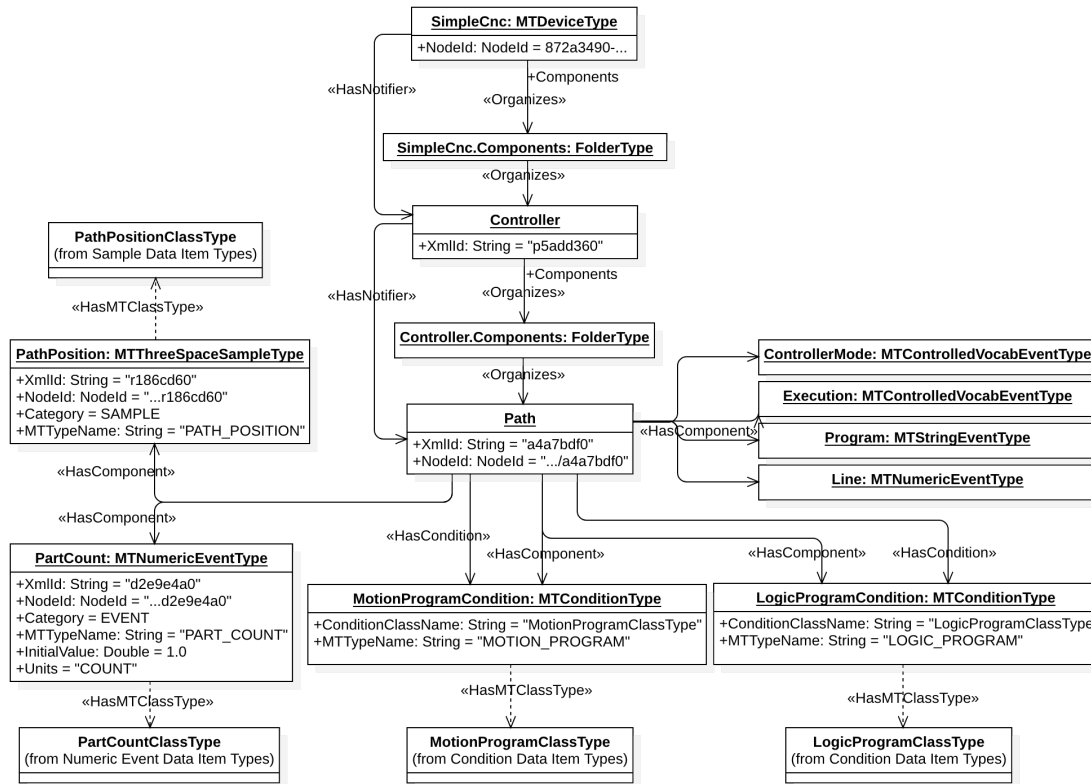


Figure 26: Path Component and Data Items

1242 **8.3.5.7 Electric System of the Device**

1243 The following example is the *Electric* system of the machine. The top level *Systems*
 1244 component is an organizational component, similar to a **Folder** that collects *Compo-*
 1245 *nents* that are central to a function in the device. The *Electric* component represents
 1246 sensor data with some of the more advanced capabilities of the MTConnect standard. The
 1247 *Electric* component demonstrate the use of a *Sensor* and *Configuration*.

1248

Listing 8: Electrical System and Sensor Configuration

```

1249 70 <Systems id="if618500">
1250 71 <Components>
1251 72 <Electric id="afb91ba0">
1252 73 <!-- Electric System Component First Set -->
1253 74 <DataItems>
1254 75 <DataItem id="x52ca7e0" name="ptemp" type="
1255 76 TEMPERATURE" category="SAMPLE" units="CELSIUS">
1256 77 <Source componentId="q9abfaf0"/>
1257 78 <Filters>
1258 79 <Filter type="PERIOD">60</Filter>
1259 80 </Filters>
1260 81 </DataItems>
1261 82 </Electric>
1262 83 </Components>
1263 84 </Systems>
    
```

```

1261 80      </DataItem>
1262 81      <DataItem id="r1e58cf0" name="pvolt" type="
1263          VOLTAGE" category="SAMPLE" units="VOLT">
1264 82          <Filters>
1265 83              <Filter type="MINIMUM_DELTA">10</Filter>
1266 84          </Filters>
1267 85      </DataItem>
1268 86      <DataItem id="tc9edc70" name="pampts" type="
1269          VOLT_AMPERE" category="SAMPLE" units="
1270          VOLT_AMPERE" representation="TIME_SERIES"
1271          sampleRate="100"/>
1272 87
1273 88      <!-- Electric System Component Second Set -->
1274 89      <DataItem id="e25c1130" name="pamp" type="
1275          AMPERAGE" category="SAMPLE" units="AMPERE"/>
1276
1277 90      <DataItem id="qb9212c0" name="pampavg" type="
1278          AMPERAGE" category="SAMPLE" units="AMPERE"
1279          statistic="AVERAGE">
1280 91          <ResetTrigger>ACTION_COMPLETE</ResetTrigger>
1281 92      </DataItem>
1282 93      <DataItem id="o63fcd30" name="ppfact" type="
1283          POWER_FACTOR" category="SAMPLE" units="
1284          PERCENT" />
1285 94
1286 95          <DataItem id="b4bb7110" type="AMPERAGE" category
1287              ="CONDITION" name="poverload">
1288 96              <Source dataItemId="e25c1130"/>
1289 97          </DataItem>
1290 98          <DataItem id="c82e32f0" type="TEMPERATURE"
1291              category="CONDITION" name="povertemp">
1292 99              <Source dataItemId="x52ca7e0"/>
1293 100          </DataItem>
1294 101      </DataItems>
1295 102      <Components>
1296 103          <Sensor id="q9abfaf0">
1297 104              <Configuration>
1298 105                  <SensorConfiguration>
1299 106                      <FirmwareVersion>23</FirmwareVersion>
1300 107                      <CalibrationDate>2018-08-12</
1301      CalibrationDate>
1302 108              <Channels>
1303 109                  <Channel number="1">
1304 110                      <Description>Temperature Probe</
1305                          Description>
1306 111                      <CalibrationDate>2018-09-11</
1307                          CalibrationDate>
1308 112                  </Channel>
1309 113              </Channels>
1310 114          </SensorConfiguration>
1311 115          </Configuration>
1312 116          </Sensor>
1313 117      </Components>
1314 118  </Electric>

```

1315

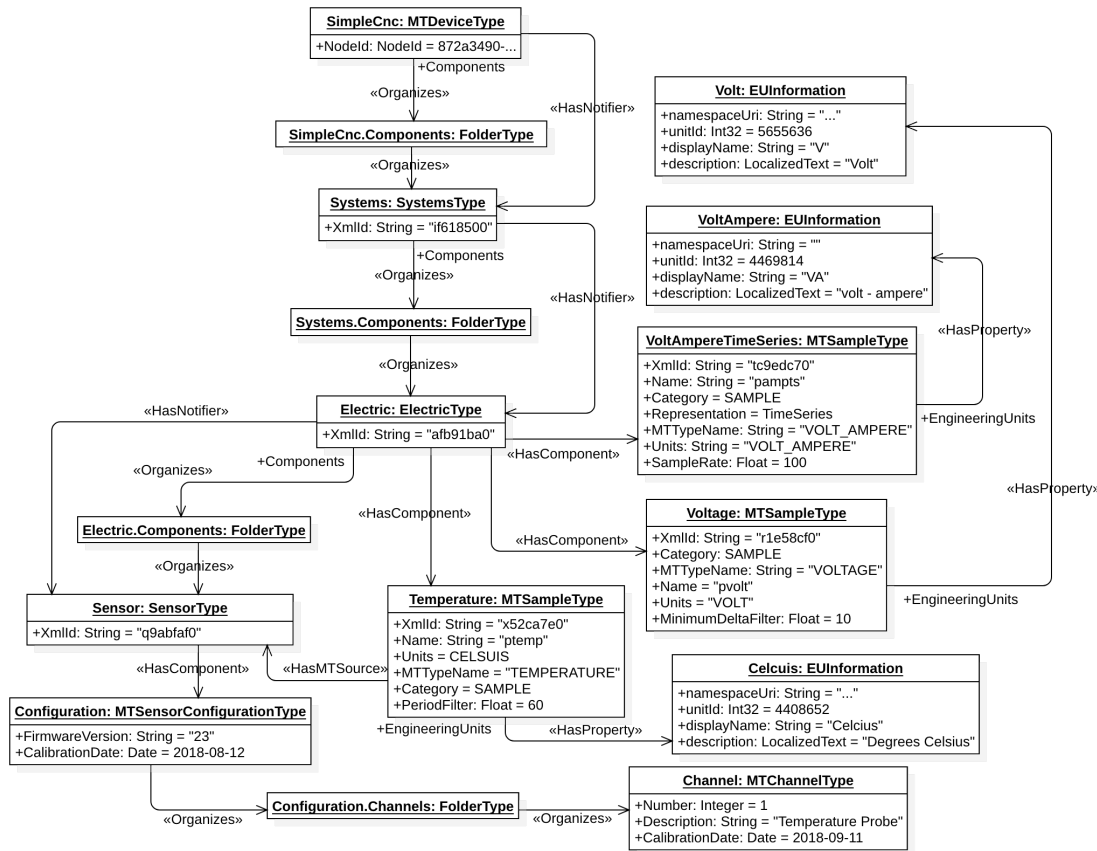


Figure 27: Electric System Component First Set

1316 In the first set of *DataItems* from Listing 8 as shown in Figure 27, the first data item on
 1317 line 75 has a period filter that is represented in the OPC UA *Variable* Temperature as a
 1318 PeriodFilter *Property* with a value of 60.0. The period filters only reports changes
 1319 after the period of time has elapsed, in this case 60 seconds—the Temperature will only
 1320 publish changes every minute in this instance.

1321 The Temperature *Variable* also has a Source element that references the Sensor
 1322 with a Configuration of type MTSensorConfigurationType. The Sensor-
 1323 Configuration has information about the FirmwareVersion and CalibrationDate
 1324 of the Sensor. The Channels represent the multiple inputs to the Sensor unit. The
 1325 first Channel has a Description and a CalibrationDate of the probe attached
 1326 to the Channel. For more information on the Channel, see MTConnect Devices [MT-
 1327 Connect Part 2.0].

1328 The following *DataItem* on line 81 has a Filter using a MINIMUM_DELTA that is rep-
 1329 resented as a MinimumDeltaFilter in the UA *Variable* representing the MTSample-
 1330 Type Voltage. The MinimumDelta represents the smallest amount of change before the

1331 change is reported. In this case the minimum change is 10 volts. Changes smaller than 10
1332 volts will not be reported for this data item.

1333 The second set of *DataItems* starting on line 89 shown in Figure 28 shows the relationship
1334 between the conditions and the other *DataItems*. As has been shown before the Condi-
1335 tions here are both related to a *DataItem* that is the source of the Condition. The
1336 *DataItem* therefor has a **HasCondition** relationship to the *Condition* and the *Compo-*
1337 *nent* has a **HasEventSource Reference** to the *DataItem*.

1338 The AverageAmperage on line 90 has a ResetTrigger, specified using the Re-
1339 setTrigger element having CDATA ACTION_COMPLETE, indicating that the Aver-
1340 age statistic is taken only when the current Action has Completed, as defined by the
1341 process. This *DataItem* will only update on when the ResetTrigger fires.

1342 Table 12 provides the OPC UA **StatusCodes** suggested values that need to be added in
1343 the working group to represent the MTConnect ResetTrigger model. The OPC Foun-
1344 dation TAC is asked to consider the addition of these additional status codes to support
1345 this capability in the MTConnect standard.

Table 12: MTConnect ResetTrigger to OPC UA **StatusCode** mapping

ResetTrigger	StatusCode	Description
ACTION_COMPLETE	Good_ - ActionCompleteReset	The value of the Data Entity that is measuring an action or operation was reset upon completion of that action or operation.
ANNUAL	Good_AnnualReset	The value of the Data Entity was reset at the end of a 12-month period.
DAY	Good_DayReset	The value of the Data Entity was reset at the end of a 24-hour period.
MAINTENANCE	Good_ - MaintenanceReset	The value of the Data Entity was reset upon completion of a maintenance event.
MANUAL	Good_ManualReset	The value of the Data Entity was reset based on a physical reset action.
MONTH	Good_MonthReset	The value of the Data Entity was reset at the end of a monthly period.
POWER_ON	Good_PowerOnReset	The value of the Data Entity was reset when power was applied to the piece of equipment after a planned or unplanned interruption of power has occurred.
SHIFT	Good_ShiftReset	The value of the Data Entity was reset at the end of a work shift.
WEEK	Good_WeekReset	The value of the Data Entity was reset at the end of a 7-day period.

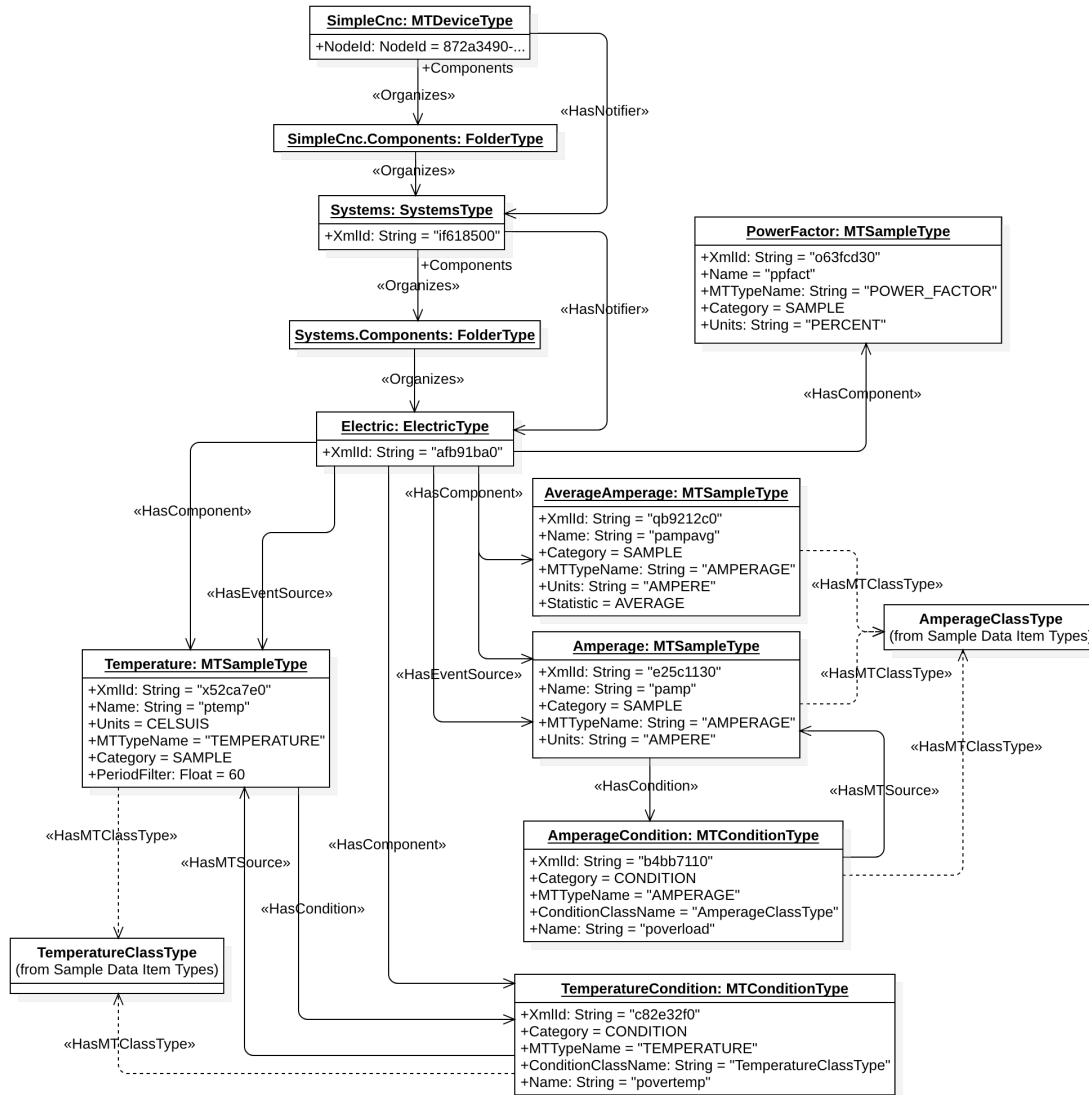


Figure 28: Electric System Component Second Set

1346 **8.3.5.8 Coolant System with multiple Tanks**

1347 The following example in Listing 9 demonstrates the situation where there are multiple
 1348 components and data items of the same semantic type differentiated only by name. The
 1349 machine has two Coolant Systems, one high pressure and one low pressure. Each of
 1350 the two Coolant Systems has two tanks, a main and a reserve tank that are represented
 1351 by *Compositions*.

1352

Listing 9: Coolant System and Sensor Configuration

```
1353
1354 119 <Coolant id="x5ef9730" name="low">
```

```

1355 120 <DataItems>
1356 121   <DataItem id="r25176b0" type="FILL_LEVEL" category="SAMPLE"
1357         units="PERCENT" name="low_main_level" compositionId="t59d1170
1358         "/>
1359 122   <DataItem id="obc97840" type="FILL_LEVEL" category="SAMPLE"
1360         units="PERCENT" name="low_reserve_level" compositionId="
1361         a7973930"/>
1362 123 </DataItems>
1363 124 <Compositions>
1364 125   <Composition id="t59d1170" type="TANK" name="main"/>
1365 126   <Composition id="a7973930" type="TANK" name="reserve"/>
1366 127 </Compositions>
1367 128 </Coolant>
1368 129 <Coolant id="b36e0070" name="high">
1369 130   <DataItems>
1370 131     <DataItem id="q94f81e0" type="FILL_LEVEL" category="SAMPLE"
1371           units="PERCENT" name="high_main_level" compositionId="
1372           a59bd5b0"/>
1373 132     <DataItem id="wf2848e0" type="FILL_LEVEL" category="SAMPLE"
1374           units="PERCENT" name="high_reserve_level" compositionId="
1375           aa373750"/>
1376 133   </DataItems>
1377 134   <Compositions>
1378 135     <Composition id="a59bd5b0" type="TANK" name="main"/>
1379 136     <Composition id="aa373750" type="TANK" name="reserve"/>
1380 137   </Compositions>
1381 138 </Coolant>

```

1383 Figure 29 presents the two coolant systems with names *high* and *low*. They are identical, each composed of two *Tank* compositions and each with two data items indication the *Fill Level* of the main and reserve *Tank*. The naming follows the rules for `TankFillLevel[low_main_level]` and `TankFillLevel[low_reserve_level]` for the *low Coolant System*.

1388 The **EngineeringUnits** were not included in the figure as they have been covered before. The *Fill Level* `MTSampleType` will reference a **PERCENT EUInformation Property** as illustrated in the previous depiction of *Load* in Figure 23.

1391 In this case the *Composition* name is converted to *PascalCase* and prepended to the *PascalCase* of the *DataItem* to create the base **BrowseName**. Since there are two identical **BrowseNames**, the name is appended in square brackets (`[]`). The same is done for the *Composition BrowseName* and the *Component BrowseName* "Coolant" giving `Coolant[high]` and `Coolant[low]`.

1396 The two *Tank* compositions have similar treatment where they are named `Tank[main]` and `Tank[reserve]` for each of the two components. The *DataItems* then refer to each of the appropriate tanks to correctly reference the composition they are associated with. What is not show in the Figure 29 is the `FillLevelClassType` to save space. Each of the *DataItems* will have a `HasMTCClassType` reference to the **ClassType**.

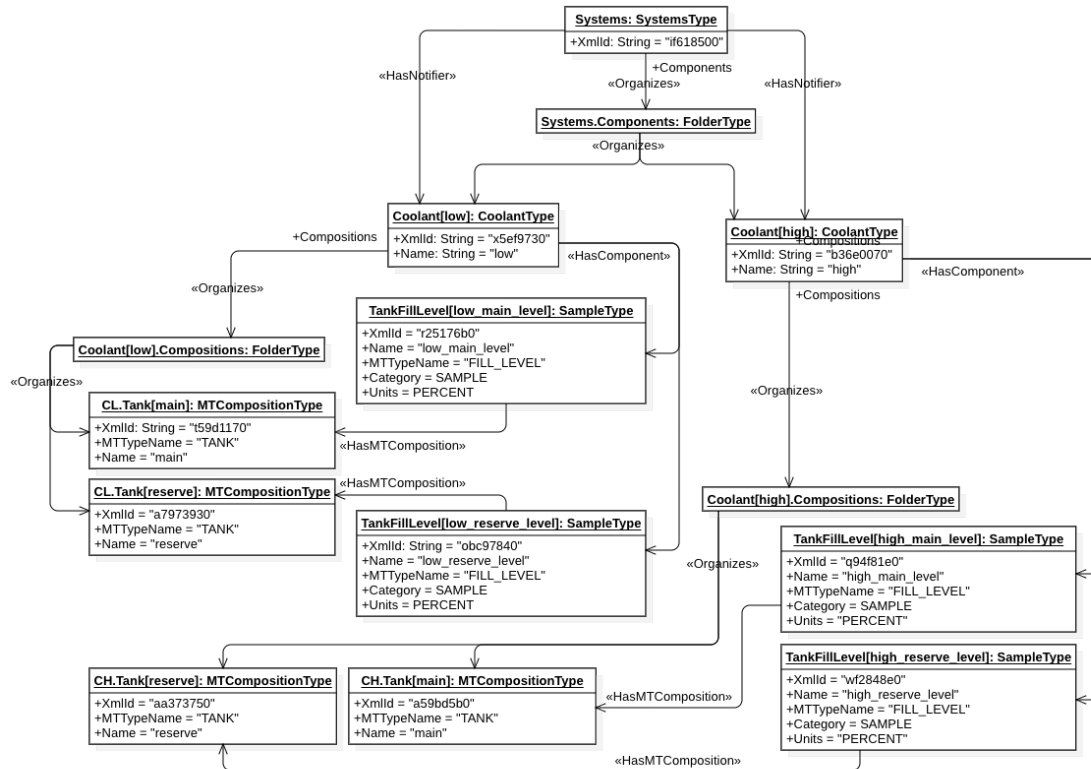


Figure 29: Coolant System

1401 8.4 MTConnect Streaming Data

1402 MTConnect separates streaming updates of data from the meta-data describing the semantic
 1403 meaning of the data. [MTConnect Part 3.0] covers the streaming information model and
 1404 the REST[Fie00] is covered in [MTConnect Part 1.0]. The protocol data in the Header,
 1405 of the XML document, is ignored representing the data in OPC UA.

1406 The HTTP REST Protocol provides two capabilities with respect to the collection of data
 1407 that are common to most *publish/subscribe* technologies. They are as follows: first, a
 1408 snapshot of the most recent know value for each *DataItem*, referred to as a *current request*,
 1409 and second, a time-series of changes that occurred going back to the beginning of the store-
 1410 and-forward *buffer*, referred to as a *sample request*.

1411 Each entry in the *buffer* is time-stamped and assigned a sequence number that indicates the
 1412 arrival order unique across all devices represented in the *Agent*. The sequence number is
 1413 monotonically increasing and is unique concerning the instance (execution) of the *Agent*.
 1414 When the *Agent* is restarted, the sequence may be reset to one indicating history has
 1415 been expunged.

1416 The following section provides the rules for taking data from the *MTConnectStream* XML
 1417 Document and represent as a series of updates to the *Variable* and generate **Events** for

1418 the `MTConditionType` and `MTMessageType` *DataItem*.

1419 8.4.1 MTConnectStreams Document Header

Listing 10: Streams Header

```

1420
1421 1 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
1422 2 <MTConnectStreams xmlns="urn:mtconnect.org:MTConnectStreams:1.4"
1423   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xsi:
1424   schemaLocation="urn:mtconnect.org:MTConnectStreams:1.4_./
1425   schema/MTConnectStreams_1.4.xsd">
1426 3   <Header version="1.4.0" creationTime="2018-10-31T21:00:01
1427     Z" nextSequence="43124" lastSequence="44221"
1428     firstSequence="1" instanceId="1541045065" sender="
1429     localhost" bufferSize="131072"/>
1430 4   <Streams>

```

1432 Listing 10 is an example of the XML *Root Element* of the `MTConnectStreams` Docu-
1433 ment and contains the standard namespace declarations for `MTConnect` and `XMLSchema`.
1434 If additional namespaces are present, they must be added as additional **namespaces**
1435 in the **OPC UA Namespace** as well. The `MTConnectStreams` document begins with
1436 a `Header` containing protocol information that represents the version of the standard
1437 referenced and the store-and-forward *buffer* sequence numbers. [`MTConnect Part 1.0`]
1438 provides information on the interaction with the *Agent* and the proper sequence of requests
1439 to receive a contiguous stream of data from any point in the sequence of data.

1440 8.4.2 MTConnectStreams Device and Component Stream

Listing 11: Component Stream

```

1441
1442 5   <ComponentStream componentId="e373fec0" component="Linear"
1443     name="X1" nativeName="X">
1444 6   <DeviceStream name="SimpleCnc" uuid="872a3490-bd2d-0136-3eb0
1445     -0c85909298d9">
1446 7   <Samples>
1447 8     <Position sequence="131" timestamp="2018-10-31T20:33:11
1448     Z" dataItemId="dcbc0570" name="Xpos">UNAVAILABLE</Position>
1449 9     <Position sequence="794" timestamp="2018-10-31T20:47:09
1450     Z" dataItemId="dcbc0570" name="Xpos">205.23</
1451     Position>
1452 10    </Samples>
1453 11  </ComponentStream>

```

1455 `MTConnect` flattens the structure when reporting data and organizes it by *Device*, *Com-*
1456 *ponent* and category; this is shown in Listing 12 Line 5 with the `DeviceStream`,

1457 ComponentStream, and Samples elements (not shown are the Events and Con-
 1458 dition elements that will be address later). When the data stream is initialized or when
 1459 it disconnects, the MTConnect *DataItem* Value is set to UNAVAILABLE as shown on
 1460 Line 8.

1461 MTConnect only reports data when it changes, and each change is assigned a monotoni-
 1462 cally increasing sequence number when it arrives at the MTConnect *Agent*. In addition
 1463 to the sequence number; the XML attribute `timestamp` indicates the time the obser-
 1464 vation was made. The `timestamp` is used when setting the **Variable Time** along with
 1465 the data and status. The data is only reported when it changes except for *DataItems* with
 1466 the representation of DISCRETE indicating that each value has a discrete meaning,
 1467 such as a PartCount where each count indicates an accrual of that many parts.

1468 The value of UNAVAILABLE will be translated to the OPC UA **DataVariable Sta-**
 1469 **tusCode** of **Bad_NotConnected** to indicate that the value of the data is currently
 1470 unknown from the data source.

1471 The following examples provide the steps to translate from the MTConnectStreams
 1472 document to the OPC UA information model presented above.

1473 8.4.3 Samples

1474 The *DataItems* with category SAMPLE are mapped to the MTSampleType which is a
 1475 subtype of the **AnalogItemType DataVariable**. The numeric value of the sample
 1476 sets the **Value** in the **AnalogItemType Variable** instance.

1477

Listing 12: Linear Component Stream

```

1478
1479 12      <ComponentStream componentId="e373fec0" component="Linear"
1480         name="X1" nativeName="X">
1481 13      <Samples>
1482 14      <Position sequence="794" timestamp="2018-10-31T20
1483 :47:09.1011Z" dataItemId="dcbc0570" name="Xpos">205.23</
1484 Position>
1485 15      <Position sequence="809" timestamp="2018-10-31T20
1486 :47:09.6021Z" dataItemId="dcbc0570" name="Xpos">
1487         206.23</Position>
1488 16      </Samples>
1489 17      </ComponentStream>

```

1491 The OPC UA **DataVariableTypes** are monitored items and have three attributes that
 1492 are updated when the value changes. They are the **Value** in the instance of the **DataVari-**
 1493 **able**, the **Time**, and the **Quality**. When the value is given, not UNAVAILABLE, the
 1494 **Quality** will be set to the Status Code of **Good**, the **Time** will be set to the `times-`
 1495 `stamp` attribute and the **Value** set to the contents of the CDATA converted to a **Double**

1496 precision value.

1497 8.4.4 String and Numeric Events

1498 The `MTStringEventType` and `MTNumericEventType` *DataItems* are managed in
 1499 the same manner as the `MTSampleType` where the **Value**, **Quality**, and **Time** are
 1500 taken from the CDATA, UNAVAILABLE state, and `timestamp` respectively.

1501

Listing 13: Path Component Stream

```

1502
1503 18      <ComponentStream componentId="a4a7bdf0" component="Path"
1504         name="P1">
1505 19      <Events>
1506 20          <Program sequence="430" timestamp="2018-10-31T20:47:09Z
1507 " dataItemId="k8dd9030">098877</Program>
1508 21          <PartCount sequence="630" timestamp="2018-10-31T20
1509 :57:09Z" dataItemId="d2e9e4a0">662</PartCount>
1510 22          <ControllerMode sequence="255" timestamp="2018-10-31T20
1511 :27:09Z" dataItemId="if36ff60">AUTOMATIC</
1512 ControllerMode>
1513 23      </Events>
1514 24      </ComponentStream>
  
```

1516 In Listing 13 on Line 20, the string value will be assigned to the *Program DataItem* in the
 1517 Path component. The following Line 21 representing the `PartCount` will be converted
 1518 to a numeric value, in this case an **Int32** and assigned to the **Value**.

1519 All extended event types will be treated as `MTStringEventTypes` since it can support
 1520 any value. It will be the responsibility of the application to interpret the value based on the
 1521 extended **ClassType** associated with the **Variable**.

1522 8.4.5 Controlled Vocabulary Events

1523 *Controlled Vocabularies* are represented as `MTControlledVocabEventType` which
 1524 is a subtype of the **MultiStateValueDiscreteType**. The **MultiStateVal-**
 1525 **ueDiscreteType** requires an integer index to be used for the **Value**, so the text given
 1526 in `MTConnect` must be looked up in the **Enumerations** in the **EnumValues Prop-**
 1527 **erty** of the **ClassType** referenced by the *HasMTTypeClass* association. The index can
 1528 be found by matching the CDATA to the **Fields** in the **Enumeration**.

1529 Referring to Listing 13 Line 22, the values of the CDATA represent the allowed enumer-
 1530 ations in the `ControllerModeDataType` as shown in Table 13. In this case the
 1531 value from `mtconnect` is `AUTOMATIC` and is looked up in the associated **Enumera-**

1532 **tionDataType** and the integer value is assigned to the **Value** of the **MTControlled-**
 1533 **VocabEventType** instance, in this example the value will be 0 for **AUTOMATIC**.

Table 13: **ControllerModeDataType** Enumeration

Name	Index
AUTOMATIC	0
EDIT	1
MANUAL	2
MANUAL_DATA_INPUT	3
SEMI_AUTOMATIC	4

1534 The **SourceTimestamp** and **Quality** will be handled as described in Section 8.4.4
 1535 for **String** and **Numeric** Events.

1536 8.4.6 Conditions

1537 Conditions are represented by the **MTConditionType** that is a subtype of the **Con-**
 1538 **ditionType**. The **MTConnect** Conditions are a representation of the state of various
 1539 alarms and health of a *Component* of the machine. There are three states for a condition
 1540 in **MTConnect**, they are **Normal**, **Warning**, and **Fault** and have the semantic meaning
 1541 *operating normally*, *a situation has been observed, but may self-correct*, and *a failure has*
 1542 *occured and needs manual intervention*. More information can be found in **MTConnect**
 1543 [**MTConnect Part 2.0**] and [**MTConnect Part 3.0**] of the **MTConnect** Standard for Condi-
 1544 tion modeling and behavior.

1545 The **MTConditionType** has a *Property* called **ActiveState** that represents if there
 1546 are any **Warnings** or **Faults** currently active. The **ActiveState** is an OPC UA
 1547 **TwoStateVariableType Variable** defined in [**UA Part 08**]. When a Condition is
 1548 **Normal**, the **ActiveState** is **False**, otherwise when either a **Warning** or **Fault** is
 1549 present, the **ActiveState** is **True**.

1550

Listing 14: Rotary C Component Stream

```

1551
1552 25 <ComponentStream componentId="zf476090" component="Rotary"
1553     name="C" nativeName="S">
1554 26 <Condition>
1555 27 <Normal sequence="201" timestamp="2018-10-31T20
1556 :34:19.9981Z" dataItemId="afb596b0" type="AMPERAGE"
1557 compositionId="b7792870" name="Soverload"/>
1558 28 <Warning sequence="503" timestamp="2018-10-31T20
1559 :45:19.9981Z" dataItemId="afb596b0" type="AMPERAGE"
1560 compositionId="b7792870" name="Soverload"
1561 qualifier="HIGH" nativeCode="MOT-WARN">Spindle
1562 Motor Warning</Warning>

```

```

1563 29      <Fault sequence="652" timestamp="2018-10-31T20
1564          :49:19.9981Z" dataItemId="afb596b0" type="AMPERAGE"
1565          compositionId="b7792870" name="Soverload"
1566          qualifier="HIGH" nativeCode="MOT-OVR">Spindle Motor
1567          Overload</Fault>
1568 30      </Condition>

```

1570 The instance of the `MTConditionType` will contain the last state of the *Condition* as
 1571 most recently observed. Each time an `MTConnect Condition` activates or deactivates,
 1572 an *Condition Event* will be created associated with the instance if the `MTCondition-`
 1573 `Type` **NodeId**.

1574 `MTConditionType` is a subtype of the **Event** and therefor is instantiated in the ad-
 1575 dress space as an *Object* to maintain the **ActiveState** as well as each occurrence of the
 1576 `Condition` results in a instance of the **Event** being published as specified in [UA Part
 1577 03] and [UA Part 09].

1578 8.4.6.1 Mapping Conditions

1579 The *ConditionType* and **EventType** properties will be set as follows:

1580	<i>EnableState</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the <code>QName</code> is <code>Unavailable</code>, EnableState is False • Otherwise, EnableState is True
1581		
1582	<i>Severity</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When <code>Normal</code>, Severity is 0. • When <code>Warning</code>, Severity is 500. • When <code>Fault</code>, Severity is 1000.
1583		
1584		
1585	<i>Retain</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When <code>Normal</code>, False • When <code>Warning</code> or <code>Fault</code>, True
1586		
1587	<i>Time</i>	<code>timestamp</code>
1588	<i>NodeId</i>	The NodeId of the Event is set to the NodeId of the <code>MT-</code> 1589 <code>ConditionType</code> <i>Object</i> instance.
1590	<i>Message</i>	The <code>CDATA</code> of the <code>Condition</code> when <code>Normal</code> or <code>Warning</code> .
1591	...	The remaining <i>Properties</i> will be set from the XML attributes 1592 of the same name.

1593 8.4.6.2 MTConnect Condition Branching Example

1594 MTConnect allows for multiple `Conditions` to be active at the same time. This is
 1595 similar to the concept of *Branching* in OPC UA. In MTConnect the the attribute `na-`
 1596 `nativeCode` is used to indicate the association to the same *Branch* and is mapped to a
 1597 `branch id` as illustrated in Figure 30. In this diagram there are three branches—0, 1, and
 1598 2—that are represent PLC alarms and are mapped to the `LOGIC_PROGRAM`. Each of these
 1599 unique `nativeCodes` is mapped to a unique branch ID and is tacked separately. Only
 1600 when the final condition transitions to normal, indicated by a *Normal* with no `nativeCode`,
 1601 is the `Condition` considered cleared and completely inactive.

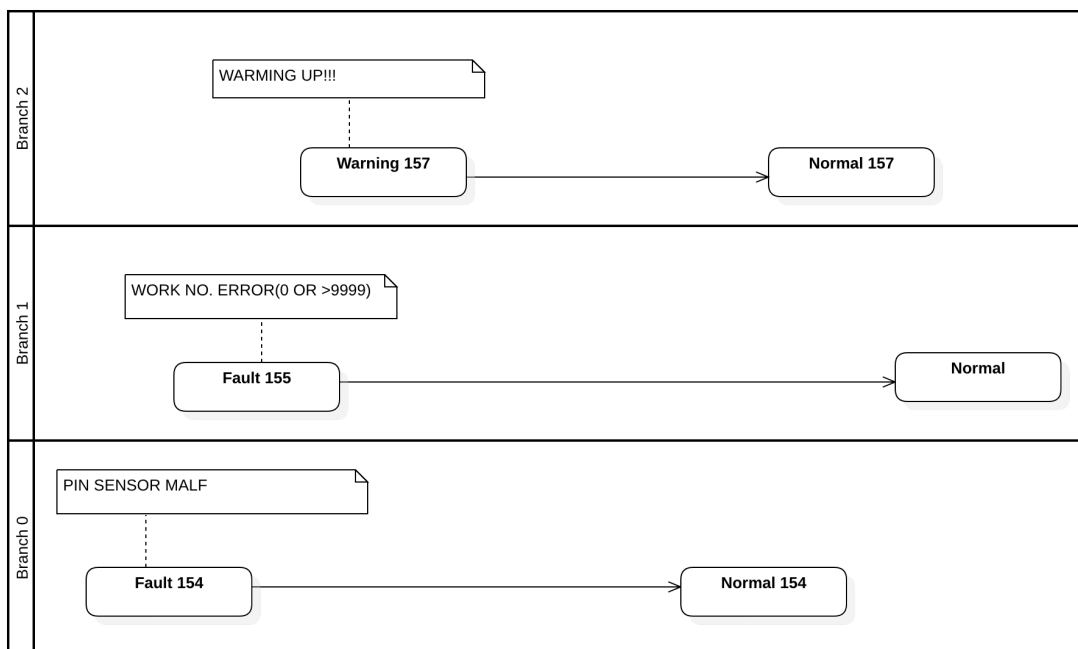


Figure 30: Condition Branching

1602 Table 14 represents the state transitions of the key OPC UA **Condition** model and the
 1603 `MTConditionType`. The text that follows will refer to this table and the MTConnect
 1604 XML to illustrate the expected behavior.

1605 MTConnect uses the `nativeCode` to determine the uniqueness of each activation of the
 1606 **Condition**. If the *Path* component has a *DataItem* with a `type` of `LOGIC_PROGRAM` and
 1607 there listing 7.

1608 The initial state of the system is given in Table 14 Row 1. When the condition is inactive,
 1609 the **ActiveState** property is **false** and the **Retain** flag is also set to **false**. This
 1610 corresponds to Listing 15 and the `Normal` initial condition state with no `nativeCode`
 1611 indicating there are no active conditions.

Table 14: LogicProgramCondition States

Seq	Branch Id	Active	Retain	Native Code	Message
1	NULL	false	false	NULL	NULL
2	0	true	true	PLC-154	PIN SENSOR MALF
3	1	true	true	PLC-155	WORK NO. ERROR(0 OR >9999)
4	2	true	true	PLC-157	WARMING UP!!!
5	0	false	false	PLC-154	PIN SENSOR MALF
6	2	false	false	PLC-157	WARMING UP!!!
7	1	false	false	PLC-155	WORK NO. ERROR(0 OR >9999)
8	NULL	false	false	NULL	NULL

1612

Listing 15: Path Logic Program Initial Normal State

1613
1614
1615
1616
1617
1618
1619
1620

```

31 <ComponentStream componentId="a4a7bdf0" component="Path" name="
    P1">
32   <Condition>
33     <Normal sequence="5200" timestamp="2018-10-31T20:30:19.9981
    Z" dataItemId="a557d330" type="LOGIC_PROGRAM"/>
34   </Condition>
35 </ComponentStream>

```

1622 The first fault occurred with the nativeCode PLC-154 and creates the first branch as
1623 shown in Listing 16. If there is only one branch, then the **BranchId** will not be required
1624 and may remain **NULL**. In this example we are setting the **BranchId** to 1 as shown in
1625 Row 2 of Table 14. A **Fault** indicates a situation where the piece of equipment is no
1626 longer able to continue functioning and needs manual intervention.

1627

Listing 16: Path Logic Program First Fault PLC-154

1628
1629
1630
1631
1632
1633
1634
1635
1636

```

36 <ComponentStream componentId="a4a7bdf0" component="Path" name="
    P1">
37   <Condition>
38     <Fault sequence="5201" timestamp="2018-10-31T20:34:19.9981Z
    " dataItemId="a557d330" type="LOGIC_PROGRAM" nativeCode="PLC
    -154">PIN SENSOR MALF</Fault>
39   </Condition>
40 </ComponentStream>

```

1638 The second **Fault** is given in Listing 17 where a second PLC alarm is active. The native
1639 code is different than the previous condition, so a second branch must be created. The
1640 branch will assigned the number 1 for this instance and a OPC UA branch will be activated
1641 as illustrated in Row 3 of Table 14.

1642

Listing 17: Path Logic Program Second Fault PLC-155

```

1643
1644 41 <ComponentStream componentId="a4a7bdf0" component="Path" name="
1645     P1">
1646 42 <Condition>
1647 43 <Fault sequence="5209" timestamp="2018-10-31T20:36:19.9981Z
1648     " dataItemId="a557d330" type="LOGIC_PROGRAM" nativeCode="PLC
1649     -155">WORK NO. ERROR(0 OR >9999)</Fault>
1650 44 </Condition>
1651 45 </ComponentStream>

```

1653 The warning in Listing 18 indicates the machine is warming up and other operations are
 1654 disabled. This condition has another `nativeCode` and therefor, like the previous condi-
 1655 tion, must create another branch. In this instance the **BranchId** will be 2. The Warning
 1656 will be represented in UA as a **severity** and represents something that is of concern but
 1657 not stopping the process. The warning is given by Row 4 of Table 14.

1658

Listing 18: Path Logic Program Warning PLC-157

```

1659
1660 46 <ComponentStream componentId="a4a7bdf0" component="Path" name="
1661     P1">
1662 47 <Condition>
1663 48 <Warning sequence="5318" timestamp="2018-10-31T20
1664     :42:19.9981Z" dataItemId="a557d330" type="LOGIC_PROGRAM"
1665     nativeCode="PLC-157">WARMING UP!!!</Warning>
1666 49 </Condition>
1667 50 </ComponentStream>

```

1669 In Listing 19, when the sensor malfunction is reset, the first condition will be returned to
 1670 an inactive state. This is indicated by Normal and a native code of PLC-154. Since
 1671 the other two conditions are still active, the `MTConditionType` is not inactive. In MT-
 1672 Connect, a current request would indicate that there is a Fault and a Warning currently
 1673 active for this Condition. The clearing of this individual Fault is also represented on
 1674 Row 5 of Table 14.

1675

Listing 19: Path Logic Program Clear Fault of PLC-154

```

1676
1677 51 <ComponentStream componentId="a4a7bdf0" component="Path" name="
1678     P1">
1679 52 <Condition>
1680 53 <Normal sequence="5467" timestamp="2018-10-31T20:51:19.9981
1681     Z" dataItemId="a557d330" type="LOGIC_PROGRAM" nativeCode="PLC
1682     -154"/>
1683 54 </Condition>
1684 55 </ComponentStream>

```

1686 In Listing 20, when the sensor malfunction is reset, the first condition will be returned to an

1687 inactive state. It is indicated by Normal and a native code of PLC-154. Since the other
 1688 two conditions are still active, the `MTConditionType` is not inactive. In `MTConnect`,
 1689 a current request would indicate that there is a Fault and a Warning currently active
 1690 for this Condition. Similar to the previous state, Table 14 clears the active state of this
 1691 branch on Row 6.

1692

Listing 20: Path Logic Program Clear Warning PLC-157

```

1693
1694 56 <ComponentStream componentId="a4a7bdf0" component="Path" name="
1695     P1">
1696 57   <Condition>
1697 58     <Normal sequence="5467" timestamp="2018-10-31T20:52:19.9981
1698     Z" dataItemId="a557d330" type="LOGIC_PROGRAM" nativeCode="PLC
1699     -157"/>
1700 59   </Condition>
1701 60 </ComponentStream>
  
```

1703 Listing 21 represents the final Normal transition that clears all the currently active con-
 1704 ditions and indicates that all the Conditions are now inactive or cleared and back to a
 1705 Normal state. Row 7 of Table 14 shows the clearing of the final branch and then we clear
 1706 everything in Row 8.

1707

Listing 21: Path Logic Program Back to Normal, All Clear

```

1708
1709 61 <ComponentStream componentId="a4a7bdf0" component="Path" name="
1710     P1">
1711 62   <Condition>
1712 63     <Normal sequence="5467" timestamp="2018-10-31T20:57:19.9981
1713     Z" dataItemId="a557d330" type="LOGIC_PROGRAM"/>
1714 64   </Condition>
1715 65 </ComponentStream>
  
```

1717 8.4.7 Messages

1718 The `MTMessageType` is a data item with an extended type that uses the `MessageEvent-`
 1719 `Data` type to provide the `NativeCode` and the `Text` of the message. The `CDATA` will
 1720 be mapped to the `Text` field and the `NativeCode` will be mapped to the field of the UA
 1721 `Data` type if it is provided as an attribute.

1722

Listing 22: Path Motion Program Normal

```

1723
1724 66 <ComponentStream componentId="a4a7bdf0" component="Path" name="
1725     P1">
  
```

```

1726 67 <Events>
1727 68 <Message sequence="6241" timestamp="2018-10-31T20
1728 :37:19.9981Z" nativeCode="755" dataItemId="m17f1750">SELECT
1729 GRIPPED SURFACE</Message>
1730 69 <Message sequence="6261" timestamp="2018-10-31T20
1731 :37:19.9981Z" nativeCode="866" dataItemId="m17f1750">
1732 SELECT TURNING SURFACE</Message>
1733 70 <Message sequence="6422" timestamp="2018-10-31T20
1734 :37:19.9981Z" nativeCode="472" dataItemId="m17f1750">
1735 MEASURING STARTING POINT X</Message>
1736 71 <Message sequence="6613" timestamp="2018-10-31T20
1737 :37:19.9981Z" nativeCode="996" dataItemId="m17f1750">
1738 MEASURING STARTING POINT Y</Message>
1739 72 </Events>
1740 73 </ComponentStream>

```

1742 The `MTMessageEventType` is a sub-type of the **EventType** providing the message
1743 and native code associated with a given `MTCConnect` message. The message source is the
1744 **Variable** `MTMessageType` that represents the meta data and the last message using
1745 the `MessageDataType`. The `MessageDataType` carries the `nativeCode` and the
1746 `CDATA` of the message text as represented in the `MTCConnectStreams` document.

1747 The representation allow for the association of meta data in the `MTMessageType` and
1748 the individual log of messages to be represented as **Events** that can be queried and col-
1749 lected by the client application. The model is similar to the dual representation in the
1750 **Condition** types.

1751 8.5 Time Series Samples

1752 *DataItems* with `TIME_SERIES` representation provides a mechanism to publish
1753 high frequency data by combining multiple observations into a single vector of values. The
1754 attribute `sampleRate` is specified in the *Devices* information model if it is immutable or
1755 for each entity with the attribute `sampleRate` if it is variable.

1756 In Listing 23, both examples are given, line 76 does not specify the `sampleRate` whereas
1757 line 78 specifies the `sampleRate`. The `sampleRate` is always given in hertz, if not
1758 specied in the `MTCConnectStreams` document, it defaults to the value given in the
1759 *DataItem*.

1760

Listing 23: Electric Component Time Series Example

```

1761
1762 74 <ComponentStream componentId="afb91ba0" component="Electric
1763 ">
1764 75 <Samples>
1765 76 <VoltAmpereTimeSeries sequence="1122" timestamp="
1766 2018-10-31T20:49:19.1981Z" dataItemId="tc9edc70" sampleCount=

```

```

1767      "10">421.23 422.36 419.55 420.14 421.98 422.32 418.25 419.75
1768      418.88 420.02</VoltAmpereTimeSeries>
1769 77      <VoltAmpereTimeSeries sequence="1123" timestamp="
1770          2018-10-31T20:49:19.2981Z" dataItemId="tc9edc70"
1771          sampleCount="10">418.20 421.45 420.11 420.49 419.81
1772          419.06 417.54 420.53 417.67 421.48</
1773          VoltAmpereTimeSeries>
1774 78      <VoltAmpereTimeSeries sequence="1124" timestamp="
1775          2018-10-31T20:49:19.3981Z" dataItemId="tc9edc70"
1776          sampleCount="10" sampleRate="100">418.09 420.48
1777          418.25 419.86 419.47 420.39 421.90 418.92 418.95
1778          420.73</VoltAmpereTimeSeries>
1779 79      <VoltAmpereTimeSeries sequence="1125" timestamp="
1780          2018-10-31T20:49:19.4981Z" dataItemId="tc9edc70"
1781          sampleCount="10" sampleRate="100">420.27 419.63
1782          421.60 420.45 422.16 417.76 420.78 418.61 421.60
1783          418.04</VoltAmpereTimeSeries>
1784 80      </Samples>
1785 81      </ComponentStream>

```

1787 In MTConnect, the *DataItem* element QName in the MTConnectStreams document
 1788 appends the *Pascal Case* of the representation to the *Pascal Case* of the type.
 1789 For example, type VOLT_AMPERE with the representation of TIME_SERIES
 1790 becomes VoltAmpereTimeSeries.

1791 All *DataItems* with representation of TIME_SERIES when reported in the MT-
 1792 ConnectStreams document require the attribute `sampleCount` to give the number
 1793 of entries in the space delimited series. MTConnect specifies in [MTConnect Part 3.0] that
 1794 the timestamp is reported at the time of the last observation. To compute the times-
 1795 tamp for each observation, use the follow procedure.

$$\delta = \frac{1}{\text{sampleRate}} s \quad (1)$$

$$\text{timestamp}_1 = \text{timestamp}_a - (\delta \times \text{sampleCount } s) \quad (2)$$

$$\text{timestamp}_2 = \text{timestamp}_1 + \delta \quad (3)$$

$$\text{timestamp}_n = \text{timestamp}_1 + \delta \times n \quad (4)$$

1796 Where *timestamp_a* is the timestamp given as the XML Attribute.

1797 When mapping *Time Series* to OPC UA, for each value in the series, compute the obser-
 1798 vation time as specified above and then update the UA **Value** with the **Time** set to the
 1799 *timestamp_n* for the *nth* entry in the series. Do this once for every entry in the series causing
 1800 `sampleCount` updates per MTConnect *Time Series* Element.

1801 The δ in Equation (1) is the time interval for each sample and by subtracting the $\delta \times$
 1802 *sampleCount* seconds, the given in Equation (2) is the first timestamp in the series. Every

1803 other timestamp can be derived by adding the $\delta \times n$ as shown in Equation (4) to the first
1804 timestamp. One can also arrive at the same result by taking the `timestamp` and counting
1805 backward from the last, where r is the reverse index starting at 0, $r \times \delta$ seconds from
1806 *timestamp_a*.

1807 *Time Series* `timestamps` will often be contiguous when giving a stream of values for
1808 audio displacement or other series that must be reassembled. In Listing 23, each set of ten
1809 values are separated by 0.10 seconds which will allow for a 100hz sample frequency and
1810 continuous values from the sensor. The format is more efficient and allows for communi-
1811 cation of waveform and high frequency data.

1812 9 MTConnect OPC UA Types

1813 9.1 Components

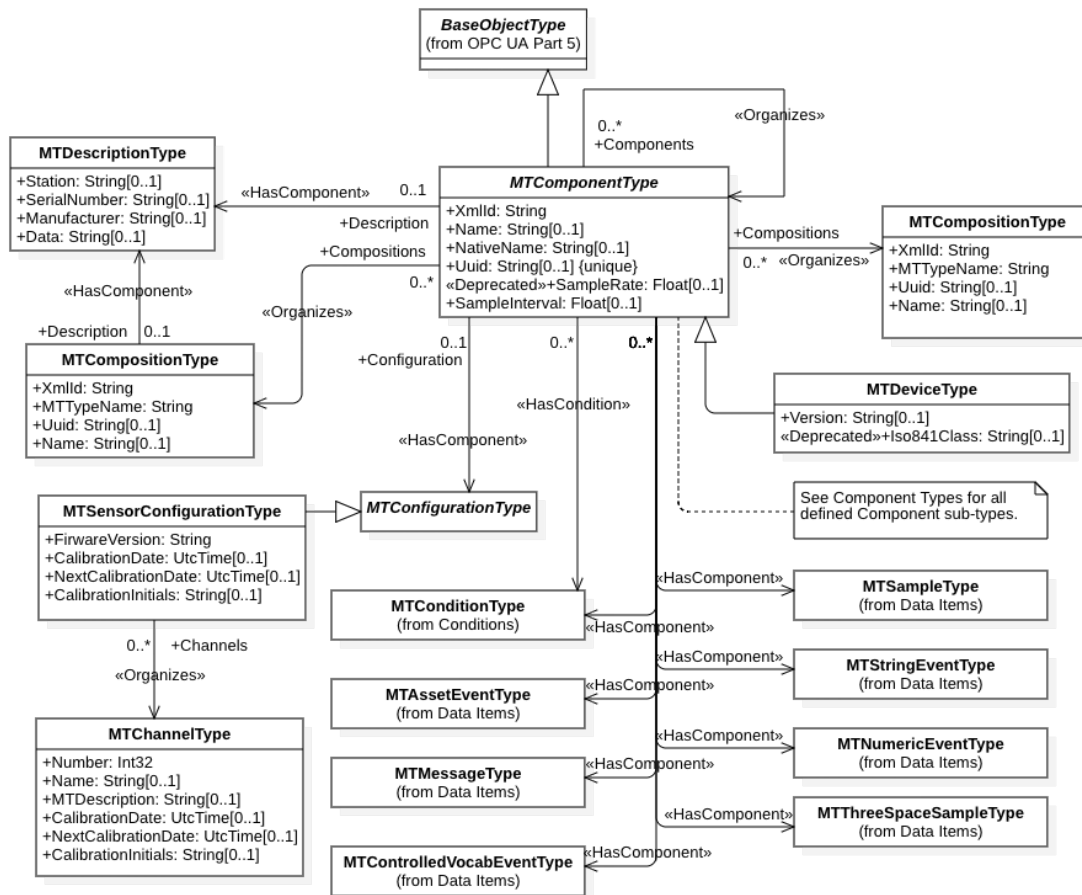


Figure 31: Components Diagram

1814 The *Components* documents the Component models and the owned objects.

1815 9.1.1 Defintion of MTChannelType

1816 A Channel of a sensor.

1817 See ChannelType in type specifications.

Table 15: MTChannelType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTChannelType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of BaseObjectType (See [UA Part 05] Documentation)					
HasProperty	Variable	Number	Int32	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	Name	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	MTDescription	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	CalibrationDate	UtcTime	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	NextCalibrationDate	UtcTime	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	CalibrationInitials	String	PropertyType	Optional

1818 9.1.2 Defintion of MTComponentType

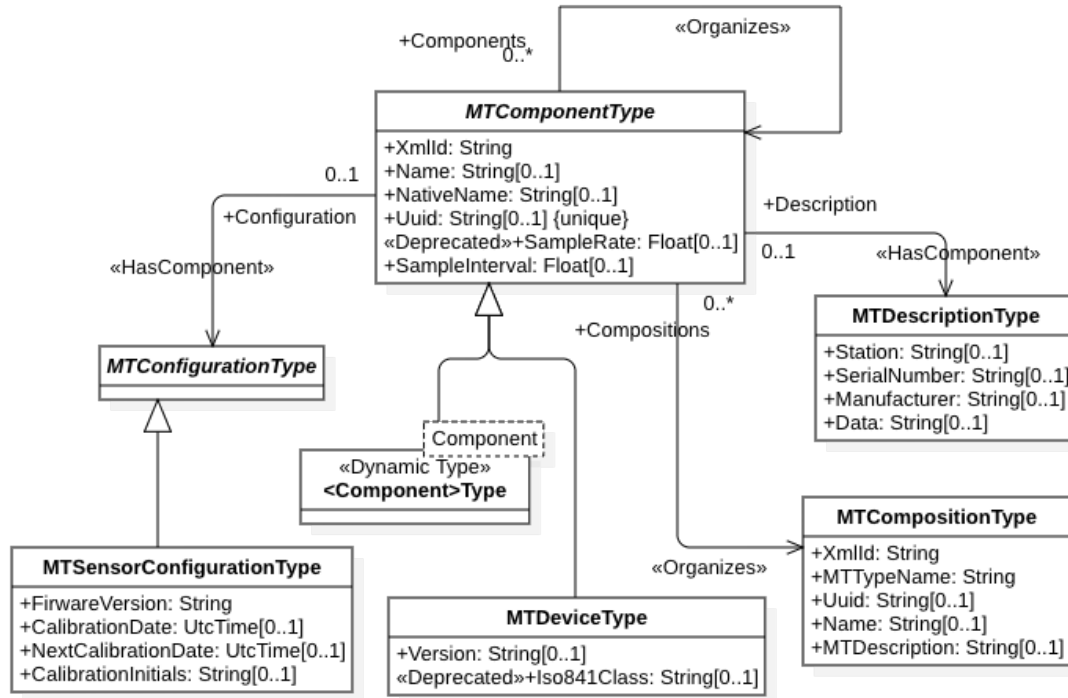


Figure 32: MTComponentType Diagram

1819 The base *Component* Type from which all MTConnect Components are derived. The
 1820 component types will be created once for all *Component Objects* of that type based on the
 1821 QName of the MTConnect XML element.

1822 The Component Objects will be created and inserted into the Components folder with a
 1823 **BrowseName** of the Component QName and the name element if specified surrounded
 1824 by square brackets, []. For example if the MTConnect Element is:

1825 `<Linear name='X'>...</...>`

1826 The OPC UA Object with **BrowseName** Linear[X] will be created with the **HasType-**
 1827 **Definition** referencing the Linear OPC UA *Type*.

1828 The meta data for the component and its relationships are static. The dynamic data will be
 1829 represented using the [UA Part 08].

Table 16: MTComponentType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTComponentType				
IsAbstract	True				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	Type-Definition	Modeling-Rule
Subtype of BaseObjectType (See [UA Part 05] Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MTDeviceType			See section 9.1.3
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ActuatorType			See section 9.2.1
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AuxiliariesType			See section 9.2.2
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AxesType			See section 9.2.9
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ControllerType			See section 9.2.13
HasSubtype	ObjectType	DoorType			See section 9.2.15
HasSubtype	ObjectType	InterfacesType			See section 9.2.16
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ResourcesType			See section 9.2.21
HasSubtype	ObjectType	SystemsType			See section 9.2.25
HasProperty	Variable	XmlId	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	Name	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	NativeName	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Uuid	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SampleRate	Float	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SampleInterval	Float	PropertyType	Optional
HasComponent	Object	Description	MTDescriptionType		Optional
HasComponent	Object	Configuration	MTConfigurationType		Optional
HasComponent	Variable	<MTControlledVocab-Event>	UInteger[]	MT-Controlled-VocabEvent-Type	Optional
HasComponent	Variable	<MTNumericEvent>	Number[]	MTNumeric-Event-Type	Optional
HasComponent	Variable	<MTStringEvent>	String[]	MTString-Event-Type	Optional
HasComponent	Variable	<MTSample>	Number[]	MTSample-Type	Optional
HasComponent	Variable	<MTMessage>	MessageDataType[]	MTMessage-Type	Optional
HasComponent	Variable	<MTAssetEvent>	AssetEventData-Type[]	MTAsset-Event-Type	Optional
HasComponent	Event	<MTCondition>	MTConditionType[]		Optional
HasCondition	Event	<MTCondition>	MTConditionType[]		Optional
HasComponent	Variable	<MTThreeSpaceSample>	ThreeSpaceSample-Data-Type[]	MTThree-SpaceSample-Type	Optional
Organizes	Object	Components	MTComponentType[]	FolderType	Optional
Organizes	Object	Compositions	MTComposition-Type[]	FolderType	Optional

1830 9.1.3 Defintion of **MTDeviceType**

1831 The **MTDevice** is a special type whose object will be the root of the device graph. The
 1832 Device uses the component type factory and the component object factories to create each
 1833 of the first level components.

1834 The compositions, relationships, and data items are then recursively created as one de-
 1835 scends the **MTConnect** information model.

Table 17: **MTDeviceType** Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTDeviceType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTComponentType (See section 9.1.2)					
HasProperty	Variable	Version	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Iso841Class	String	PropertyType	Optional

1836 9.1.3.1 Constraints

1837 • Constraint **uuid_not_empty**:

1838
 1840

1 `uuid->notEmpty()`

1841 Documentation: The UUID SHALL be provided.

1842 • Constraint **name_not_empty**:

1843
 1845

1 `name->notEmpty()`

1846 Documentation: The name of the Device SHALL be given.

1847 9.1.4 Defintion of **MTCompositionType**

1848 The **MTCompositionType** represents all composition entities. The specification of
 1849 how to form the **BrowseName** is specified in Section 8.3.2.

1850 The data items are added to the relationship where the *DataItem* to *Composition* relation-
 1851 ship is represented by the **BrowseName** Composition property of the data item. The data
 1852 items are added to the *Composition* by their **BrowseNames**.

Table 18: MTCompositionType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTCompositionType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of BaseObjectType (See [UA Part 05] Documentation)					
HasProperty	Variable	XmlId	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MType Name	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	Uuid	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Name	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasComponent	Object	Description	MTDescriptionType		Optional

1853 9.1.5 Defintion of MTConfigurationType

1854 The abstract MTConfigurationType currently has only one sub-type,
 1855 MTSensorConfigurationType. In the future, the configurations will also contain
 1856 component and device configuration information as sub-types.

Table 19: MTConfigurationType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTConfigurationType				
IsAbstract	True				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of BaseObjectType (See [UA Part 05] Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MTSensorConfigurationType		See section 9.1.6	

1857 9.1.6 Defintion of MTSensorConfigurationType

1858 An MTConnect Sensor Configuration associated with the Component.

1859 See SensorConfigurationType in type-specifications.

Table 20: MTSensorConfigurationType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTSensorConfigurationType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTConfigurationType (See section 9.1.5)					
HasProperty	Variable	FirmwareVersion	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	CalibrationDate	UtcTime	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	NextCalibrationDate	UtcTime	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	CalibrationInitials	String	PropertyType	Optional
Organizes	Object	Channels	MTChannelType[]	FolderType	Optional

1860 9.1.7 Defintion of MTDescriptionType

1861 An MTConnect Component Description.

1862 See the DescriptionType in the type-specifications.

Table 21: MTDescriptionType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTDescriptionType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of BaseObjectType (See [UA Part 05] Documentation)					
HasProperty	Variable	Station	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SerialNumber	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Manufacturer	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Data	String	PropertyType	Optional

1863 9.1.7.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

1864 • `Data::String`: From the CDATA of the Description Element in MTConnect.

1865 9.2 Component Types

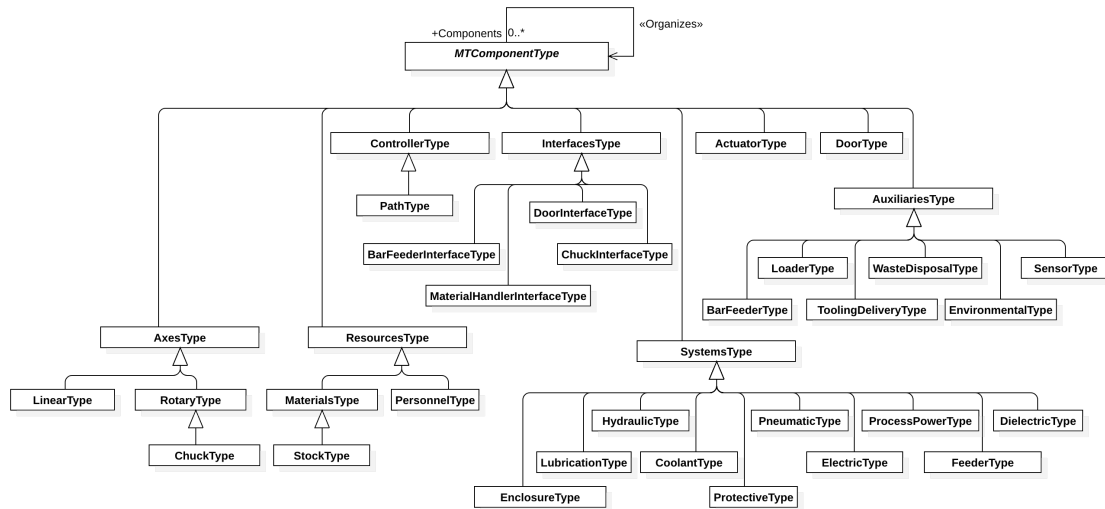


Figure 33: Component Types Diagram

1866 All the sub types of components organized into top level organizational types.

1867 9.2.1 Defintion of ActuatorType

1868 the information for an apparatus for moving or controlling a mechanism or system

Table 22: ActuatorType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ActuatorType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTCComponentType (See Components Documentation)					

1869 9.2.2 Defintion of AuxiliariesType

1870 representing functional sub-systems that provide supplementary or extended capabilities

1871 for a piece of equipment, but they are not required for the basic operation of the equipment

Table 23: AuxiliariesType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AuxiliariesType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTCComponentType (See Components Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	BarFeederType		See section 9.2.3	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	EnvironmentalType		See section 9.2.4	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LoaderType		See section 9.2.5	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	SensorType		See section 9.2.6	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ToolingDeliveryType		See section 9.2.7	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	WasteDisposalType		See section 9.2.8	

1872 9.2.3 Defintion of BarFeederType

1873 a unit involved in delivering bar stock to a piece of equipment.

Table 24: BarFeederType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	BarFeederType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of AuxiliariesType (See section 9.2.2)					

1874 9.2.4 Defintion of EnvironmentalType

1875 the information for a unit or function involved in monitoring, managing, or conditioning
 1876 the environment around or within a piece of equipment.

Table 25: EnvironmentalType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	EnvironmentalType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of AuxiliariesType (See section 9.2.2)					

1877 9.2.5 Defintion of LoaderType

1878 the information for a unit comprised of all the parts involved in moving and distributing
 1879 materials, parts, tooling, and other items to or from a piece of equipment

Table 26: LoaderType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LoaderType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of AuxiliariesType (See section 9.2.2)					

1880 9.2.6 Defintion of SensorType

1881 the information for a piece of equipment that responds to a physical stimulus and transmits
 1882 a resulting impulse or value from a sensing unit

Table 27: SensorType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	SensorType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of AuxiliariesType (See section 9.2.2)					

1883 9.2.7 Defintion of ToolingDeliveryType

1884 a unit involved in managing, positioning, storing, and delivering tooling within a piece of
 1885 equipment.

Table 28: ToolingDeliveryType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ToolingDeliveryType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of AuxiliariesType (See section 9.2.2)					

1886 9.2.8 Defintion of WasteDisposalType

1887 the information for a unit comprised of all the parts involved in removing manufacturing
 1888 byproducts from a piece of equipment

Table 29: WasteDisposalType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	WasteDisposalType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of AuxiliariesType (See section 9.2.2)					

1889 9.2.9 Defintion of AxesType

1890 Organizes parts of the device that perform linear or rotational motion

Table 30: AxesType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AxesType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTComponentType (See Components Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LinearType		See section 9.2.10	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	RotaryType		See section 9.2.11	

1891 9.2.10 Defintion of LinearType

1892 the movement of a physical piece of equipment, or a portion of the equipment, in a straight
1893 line.

Table 31: LinearType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LinearType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of AxesType (See section 9.2.9)					

1894 9.2.11 Defintion of RotaryType

1895 rotary movement of a physical piece of equipment or a portion of the equipment.

Table 32: RotaryType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	RotaryType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of AxesType (See section 9.2.9)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ChuckType		See section 9.2.12	

1896 9.2.12 Defintion of ChuckType

1897 provides the information about a mechanism that holds a part or stock material in place

Table 33: ChuckType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ChuckType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of RotaryType (See section 9.2.11)					

1898 9.2.13 Defintion of ControllerType

1899 intelligent or computational function within a piece of equipment

Table 34: ControllerType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ControllerType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTComponentType (See Components Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PathType		See section 9.2.14	

1900 9.2.14 Defintion of PathType

1901 information for an independent operation or function within a ControllerType

Table 35: PathType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PathType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of ControllerType (See section 9.2.13)					

1902 9.2.15 Defintion of DoorType

1903 the information for a mechanical mechanism or closure that can cover, for example, a
 1904 physical access portal into a piece of equipment

Table 36: DoorType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	DoorType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTComponentType (See Components Documentation)					

1905 9.2.16 Defintion of InterfacesType

Table 37: InterfacesType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	InterfacesType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTComponentType (See Components Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	BarFeederInterfaceType		See section 9.2.17	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ChuckInterfaceType		See section 9.2.18	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	DoorInterfaceType		See section 9.2.19	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MaterialHandlerInterfaceType		See section 9.2.20	

1906 9.2.17 Defintion of BarFeederInterfaceType

1907 information used to coordinate the operations between a Bar Feeder and another piece of
 1908 equipment

Table 38: BarFeederInterfaceType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	BarFeederInterfaceType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of InterfacesType (See section 9.2.16)					

1909 9.2.18 Defintion of ChuckInterfaceType

1910 information used to coordinate the operations between two pieces of equipment, one of
 1911 which controls the operation of a chuck

Table 39: ChuckInterfaceType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ChuckInterfaceType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of InterfacesType (See section 9.2.16)					

1912 9.2.19 Defintion of DoorInterfaceType

1913 information used to coordinate the operations between two pieces of equipment, one of
 1914 which controls the operation of a door

Table 40: DoorInterfaceType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	DoorInterfaceType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of InterfacesType (See section 9.2.16)					

1915 9.2.20 Defintion of MaterialHandlerInterfaceType

1916 set of information used to coordinate the operations between a piece of equipment and
 1917 another associated piece of equipment used to automatically handle various types of ma-
 1918 terials or services associated with the original piece of equipment

Table 41: MaterialHandlerInterfaceType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MaterialHandlerInterfaceType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of InterfacesType (See section 9.2.16)					

1919 9.2.21 Defintion of ResourcesType

Table 42: ResourcesType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ResourcesType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTComponentType (See Components Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MaterialsType		See section 9.2.22	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PersonnelType		See section 9.2.24	

1920 9.2.22 Defintion of MaterialsType

- 1921 information about materials or other items consumed or used by the piece of equipment
 1922 for production of parts, materials, or other types of goods

Table 43: MaterialsType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MaterialsType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of ResourcesType (See section 9.2.21)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	StockType		See section 9.2.23	

1923 9.2.23 Defintion of StockType

- 1924 the information for the material that is used in a manufacturing process and to which work
 1925 is applied in a machine or piece of equipment to produce parts.

Table 44: StockType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	StockType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MaterialsType (See section 9.2.22)					

1926 9.2.24 Defintion of PersonnelType

Table 45: PersonnelType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PersonnelType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of ResourcesType (See section 9.2.21)					

1927 9.2.25 Defintion of SystemsType

1928 major sub-systems that are permanently integrated into a piece of equipment

Table 46: SystemsType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	SystemsType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTComponentType (See Components Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	CoolantType		See section 9.2.26	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	DielectricType		See section 9.2.27	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ElectricType		See section 9.2.28	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	EnclosureType		See section 9.2.29	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	FeederType		See section 9.2.30	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	HydraulicType		See section 9.2.31	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LubricationType		See section 9.2.32	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PneumaticType		See section 9.2.33	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ProcessPowerType		See section 9.2.34	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ProtectiveType		See section 9.2.35	

1929 9.2.26 Defintion of CoolantType

1930 a system comprised of all the parts involved in distribution and management of fluids that
 1931 remove heat from a piece of equipment.

Table 47: CoolantType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	CoolantType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of SystemsType (See section 9.2.25)					

1932 9.2.27 Defintion of DielectricType

1933 a system that manages a chemical mixture used in a manufacturing process being per-
 1934 formed at that piece of equipment.

Table 48: DielectricType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	DielectricType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of SystemsType (See section 9.2.25)					

1935 9.2.28 Defintion of ElectricType

1936 represents the information for the main power supply for device piece of equipment and
 1937 the distribution of that power throughout the equipment.

Table 49: ElectricType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ElectricType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of SystemsType (See section 9.2.25)					

1938 9.2.29 Defintion of EnclosureType

1939 a structure used to contain or isolate a piece of equipment or area.

Table 50: EnclosureType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	EnclosureType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of SystemsType (See section 9.2.25)					

1940 9.2.30 Defintion of FeederType

1941 the information for a system that manages the delivery of materials within a piece of
 1942 equipment.

Table 51: FeederType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	FeederType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of SystemsType (See section 9.2.25)					

1943 9.2.31 Defintion of HydraulicType

1944 system comprised of all the parts involved in moving and distributing pressurized liquid
 1945 throughout the piece of equipment.

Table 52: HydraulicType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	HydraulicType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of SystemsType (See section 9.2.25)					

1946 9.2.32 Defintion of LubricationType

1947 a system comprised of all the parts involved in distribution and management of fluids used
 1948 to lubricate portions of the piece of equipment.

Table 53: LubricationType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LubricationType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of SystemsType (See section 9.2.25)					

1949 9.2.33 Defintion of PneumaticType

1950 a system comprised of all the parts involved in moving and distributing pressurized gas
 1951 throughout the piece of equipment.

Table 54: PneumaticType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PneumaticType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of SystemsType (See section 9.2.25)					

1952 9.2.34 Defintion of ProcessPowerType

1953 the information for a power source associated with a piece of equipment that supplies
 1954 energy to the manufacturing process separate from the Electric system

Table 55: ProcessPowerType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ProcessPowerType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of SystemsType (See section 9.2.25)					

1955 9.2.35 Defintion of ProtectiveType

1956 the information for those functions that detect or prevent harm or damage to equipment or
 1957 personnel.

Table 56: ProtectiveType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ProtectiveType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of SystemsType (See section 9.2.25)					

1958 **9.3 Data Items**

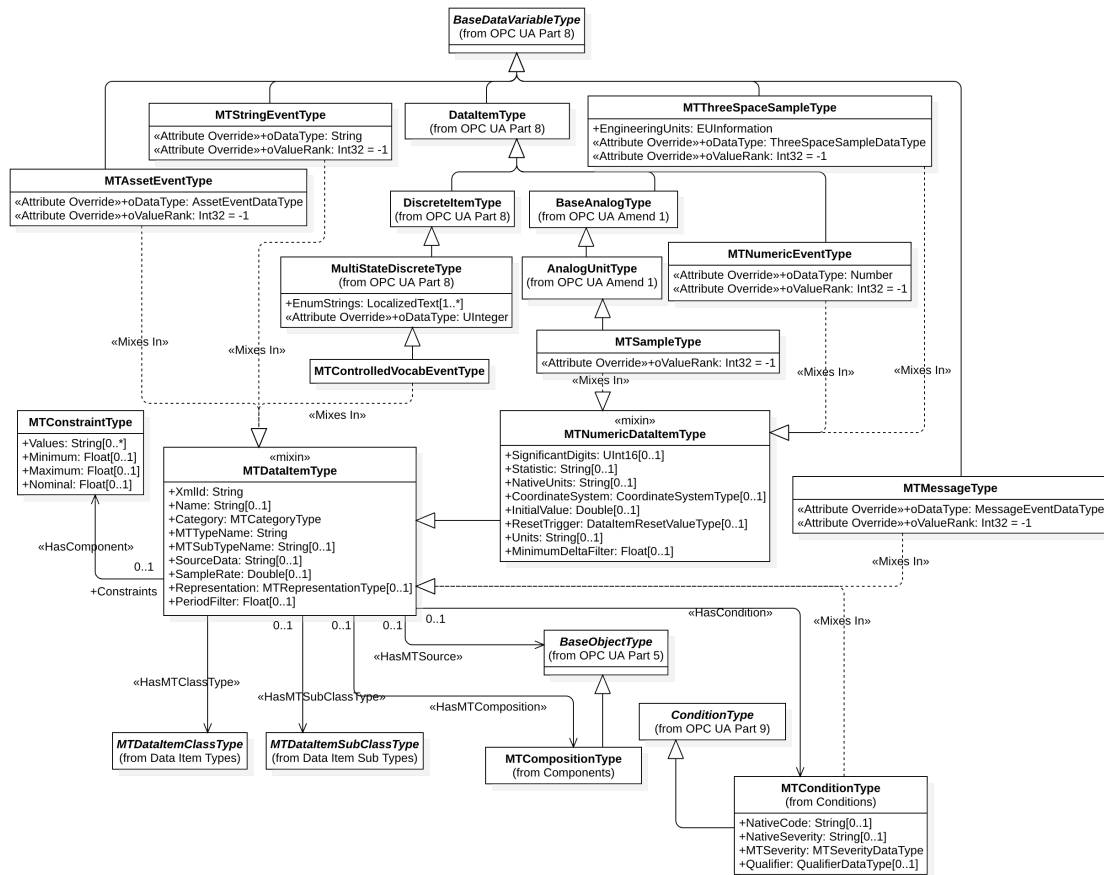


Figure 34: Data Items Diagram

1959 *DataItems* in MTConnect repress data that can be reported by a piece of manufacturing
 1960 equipment and are mapped to the *DataVariableTypes* in OPC UA. The mapping rules
 1961 are given in Section 8 and leverage the capabilities of the OPC UA standard to represent
 1962 data reported by manufacturing equipment. There are some MTConnect *DataItems* that
 1963 are represented using mechanisms beyond the *DataVariableType*, these are the *Conditions*
 1964 *category* and the *Messages types*.

1965 All the *DataItems* of with a *category* CONDITION and are mapped to the MTCondi-

1966 tionType that is decended from the **Event** base types. The *Message* is also an **Event**
 1967 type, but does not retain an active state as the *Condition* does.

1968 The MTConnect *DataItem* has a lot of contextual meta-data that is used in each of the
 1969 MTConnect types that are decended from different OPC UA **DataVariable** to make
 1970 greatest use of the OPC UA standard [UA Part 08]. The Companion specification uses
 1971 a «*mixin*» pattern that provides a set of common *Properties* and *Components* that are
 1972 included in all sub-types that represent MTConnect *DataItems*.

1973 The following types all mixin the common properties from the *MTDataItemType* or
 1974 *MTNumericDataItemType* depending on the nature of the information.

1975 9.3.1 Defintion of **AssetEventData**Type

1976 A special *Variable* data type for asset change with a *AssetType* and *AssetId*.

Table 57: *AssetEventData*Type *Data*Type

Field	Type	Optional
AssetId	String	Mandatory
AssetType	String	Mandatory

1977 9.3.2 Defintion of **MTAssetEvent**Type

1978 The asset events have an additional attribute regarding the asset change or removal identi-
 1979 fier and the type of asset that is being reported.

1980 9.3.2.1 Dependencies and Relationships

- 1981 • Mixes in *MTDataItemType*, see See section 9.3.6

Table 58: MTAssetEventType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTAssetEventType				
IsAbstract	False				
ValueRank	-1				
DataType	AssetEventDataTypes				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	Type-Definition	Modeling-Rule
Subtype of BaseDataVariableType (See [UA Part 08] Documentation)					
HasProperty	Variable	XmlId	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	Name	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Category	MTCategoryType	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MTypeNames	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MSubTypeNames	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SourceData	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SampleRate	Double	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Representation	MTRepresentationType	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	PeriodFilter	Float	PropertyType	Optional
HasMTCClassType	Object	<MTDataItemClass>	MTDataItemClassType		Mandatory
HasMTSubClassType	Object	<MTDataItemSubClass>	MTDataItemSubClassType		Optional
HasMT-Composition	Object	<MTCComposition>	MTCCompositionType		Optional
HasMTSource	Object	<BaseObject>	BaseObjectType		Optional
HasCondition	Event	<MTCondition>	MTConditionType		Optional
HasComponent	Object	Constraints	MTConstraintType		Optional

1982 9.3.3 Defintion of MTConditionClassType

1983 The abstract type for all data items types that are specifically for CONDITION cate-
 1984 gory.

Table 59: MTConditionClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTConditionClassType				
IsAbstract	True				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	Type Definition	Modeling Rule
Subtype of MTDataItemClassType (See Data Item Types Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ActuatorClassType		See section 9.10.1	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	CommunicationsClassType		See section 9.10.2	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	DataRangeClassType		See section 9.10.3	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LogicProgramClassType		See section 9.10.5	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	HardwareClassType		See section 9.10.4	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MotionProgramClassType		See section 9.10.6	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	SystemClassType		See section 9.10.7	

1985 9.3.4 Defintion of MTConstraintType

1986 The MTConnect constraints. The Values or the Minimum, Maximum, and Nominal values
 1987 should be provided. Multiple Values can be provided as an array as a set of allowable
 1988 values for this *DataItem*.

Table 60: MTConstraintType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTConstraintType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	Type Definition	Modeling Rule
Subtype of BaseObjectType (See [UA Part 05] Documentation)					
HasProperty	Variable	Values	String[]	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Minimum	Float	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Maximum	Float	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Nominal	Float	PropertyType	Optional

1989 9.3.5 Defintion of MTControlledVocabEvent Type

1990 All *DataItems* with category EVENT having Controlled Vocabularies (Enumerations)
 1991 will be added as sub-types of this type which is mapped to the OPC/UA MultiStateVal-
 1992 ueDiscreteType. Otherwise, either MTString or MTNumeric will be used. All subtypes
 1993 are direct representations of the MTConnect equivalent elements that can be found in the
 1994 MTConnect Part 3 [MTConnect Part 3.0] documents.

Table 61: MTControlledVocabEventType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTControlledVocabEventType				
IsAbstract	False				
ValueRank	-2				
DataType	UInteger				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	Type-Definition	Modeling-Rule
Subtype of MultiStateDiscreteType (See [UA Part 08] Documentation)					
HasProperty	Variable	XmlId	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	Name	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Category	MTCategoryType	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MTypeNames	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MSubTypeNames	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SourceData	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SampleRate	Double	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Representation	MRepresentationType	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	PeriodFilter	Float	PropertyType	Optional
HasMTCClassType	Object	<MTDataItemClass>	MTDataItemClassType		Mandatory
HasMTSubClassType	Object	<MTDataItemSubClass>	MTDataItemSubClassType		Optional
HasMT-Composition	Object	<MTComposition>	MTCompositionType		Optional
HasMTSource	Object	<BaseObject>	BaseObjectType		Optional
HasCondition	Event	<MTCondition>	MTConditionType		Optional
HasComponent	Object	Constraints	MTConstraintType		Optional

1995 9.3.5.1 Dependencies and Relationships

- 1996 • Mixes in MTDataItemType, see See section 9.3.6

1997 9.3.6 Defintion of «mixin» MTDataItemType

- 1998 The data item mixin will inject the properties and the methods into the related classes.
 1999 This facility is similar to the Ruby module mixin or the Scala traits.

Table 62: MTDaItemType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTDaItemType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	Type-Definition	Modeling-Rule
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MTNumericDataItem		See section 9.3.7	
HasProperty	Variable	XmlId	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	Name	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Category	MTCategoryType	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MTTypeName	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MTSubTypeName	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SourceData	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SampleRate	Double	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Representation	MTRepresentation-Type	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	PeriodFilter	Float	PropertyType	Optional
HasMTClassType	Object	<MTDataItemClass>	MTDataItemClassType		Mandatory
HasMTSubClass-Type	Object	<MTDataItemSub-Class>	MTDataItemSubClassType		Optional
HasMT-Composition	Object	<MTComposition>	MTCompositionType		Optional
HasMTSource	Object	<BaseObject>	BaseObjectType		Optional
HasCondition	Event	<MTCondition>	MTConditionType		Optional
HasComponent	Object	Constraints	MTConstraintType		Optional

2000 9.3.6.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2001 • **Allowable Values** for MTCategoryType

2002 Represents the category attribute of the MTConnect *DataItem*.

Table 63: MTCategoryType Enumeration

Name	Index
EVENT	0
CONDITION	1
SAMPLE	2

- 2003 • **SourceData::String:** The text that is the CDATA of the Source element.

- 2004 • **Allowable Values** for MTRepresentationType

2005 Represents the representation attribute of the MTConnect *DataItem*.

Table 64: MTRepresentationType Enumeration

Name	Index
DISCRETE	0
TIME_SERIES	1
VALUE	2

- 2006 • `PeriodFilter::Float`: Represents the `MTConnect Filter` subtype of `Pe-`
2007 `riodFilter`.
- 2008 • **Allowable Values** for `MTRepresentationType`
- 2009 Represents the `representation` attribute of the `MTConnect DataItem`.

Table 65: MTRepresentationType Enumeration

Name	Index
DISCRETE	0
TIME_SERIES	1
VALUE	2

- 2010 • **Allowable Values** for `MTCategoryType`
- 2011 Represents the `category` attribute of the `MTConnect DataItem`.

Table 66: MTCategoryType Enumeration

Name	Index
EVENT	0
CONDITION	1
SAMPLE	2

2012 9.3.6.2 Operations

- 2013 • `getStatusCode ()` Documentation: The OPC UA status code will be created
2014 using the following process:
- 2015 – If the value of the data item is `UNAVAILABLE` a status code of **Uncer-**
2016 **tain_NoCommunicationLastUsable**
- 2017 – When a reset trigger is specified, new **Good_** status codes will be created. See
2018 `ResetTrigger` enumeration.

2019 9.3.6.3 Dependencies and Relationships

- 2020 • **Allowable Values** for `MtRepresentationType`
 2021 Represents the `representation` attribute of the `MtConnect DataItem`.

Table 67: `MtRepresentationType` Enumeration

Name	Index
DISCRETE	0
TIME_SERIES	1
VALUE	2

- 2022 • **Allowable Values** for `MtCategoryType`
 2023 Represents the `category` attribute of the `MtConnect DataItem`.

Table 68: `MtCategoryType` Enumeration

Name	Index
EVENT	0
CONDITION	1
SAMPLE	2

2024 9.3.7 Defintion of «mixin» `MtNumericDataItemType`

- 2025 These are the additional attributes that are relevent to numeric data items. The factory will
 2026 evaluate these values and will set the engineering units and the range associated with the
 2027 parent entity.

Table 69: MTNumericDataItemType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTNumericDataItemType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	Modeling-Rule
Subtype of MTDataItemType (See section 9.3.6)					
HasProperty	Variable	SignificantDigits	UInt16	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Statistic	MTStatisticType	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	NativeUnits	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	CoordinateSystem	MTCoordinateSystem-Type	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	InitialValue	Double	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	ResetTrigger	MTResetTriggerType	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Units	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	MinimumDeltaFilter	Float	PropertyType	Optional

2028 9.3.7.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2029 • `SignificantDigits::UInt16`: The significant digits is converted to a *ValuePrecision*.
- 2030
- 2031 • **Allowable Values** for `MTStatisticType`

Table 70: MTStatisticType Enumeration

Name	Index
AVERAGE	0
MAXIMUM	1
MEDIAN	2
MINIMUM	3
MODE	4
RANGE	5
ROOT_MEAN_SQUARE	6
STANDARD_DEVIATION	7

- 2032 • **Allowable Values** for `MTCoordinateSystemType`
- 2033 Represents the `coordinateSystem` attribute of the `MTConnect DataItem`.

Table 71: MTCoordinateSystemType Enumeration

Name	Index
MACHINE	0
WORK	1

- 2034 • **Allowable Values** for MTResetTriggerType
- 2035 These need to become **Good_** status code in OPC UA.

Table 72: MTResetTriggerType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTION_COMPLETE	0
ANNUAL	1
DAY	2
MAINTENANCE	3
MANUAL	4
MONTH	5
POWER_ON	6
SHIFT	7
WEEK	8

- 2036 • **MinimumDeltaFilter::Float:** Represents the MTConnect Filter sub-
- 2037 **type** of MinimumDeltaFilter.

2038 9.3.8 Defintion of MTEventClassType

2039 The base type class for all data items with a category of EVENT.

Table 73: MTEventClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTEventClassType				
IsAbstract	True				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemClassType (See Data Item Types Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MTControlledVocabEventClassType		See section 9.7.1	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MTNumericEventClassType		See section 9.8.1	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MTStringEventClassType		See section 9.9.1	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MTMessageClassType		See section 9.5.2	

2040 9.3.9 Defintion of `MTMessageEventType`

Table 74: `MTMessageEventType` Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTMessageEventType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of <code>BaseEventType</code> (See [UA Part 05] Documentation)					
HasProperty	Variable	NativeCode	String	PropertyType	Optional

2041 9.3.10 Defintion of `MTMessageType`

2042 The message is a sub-type of the *DataVariableType* using the `MessageEventData` type
 2043 to represent the values for *NativeCode* and *Text* of the message from the CDATA of the MT-
 2044 Connect Streams message.

2045 9.3.10.1 Dependencies and Relationships

- 2046 • Mixes in `MTDataItemType`, see See section 9.3.6

Table 75: MTMessageType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTMessageType				
IsAbstract	False				
ValueRank	-1				
DataType	MessageDataType				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	Type-Definition	Modeling-Rule
Subtype of BaseDataVariableType (See [UA Part 08] Documentation)					
HasProperty	Variable	XmlId	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	Name	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Category	MTCategoryType	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MTypeNames	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MSubTypeNames	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SourceData	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SampleRate	Double	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Representation	MRepresentationType	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	PeriodFilter	Float	PropertyType	Optional
HasMTClassType	Object	<MTDataItemClass>	MTDataItemClassType		Mandatory
HasMTSubClassType	Object	<MTDataItemSubClass>	MTDataItemSubClassType		Optional
HasMT-Composition	Object	<MTComposition>	MTCompositionType		Optional
HasMTSource	Object	<BaseObject>	BaseObjectType		Optional
HasCondition	Event	<MTCondition>	MTConditionType		Optional
HasComponent	Object	Constraints	MTConstraintType		Optional

2047 9.3.11 Defintion of MTNumericEventType

2048 All data items with category `Event` and a numeric value. These are usually counters for
 2049 parts and lines. Currently only builtin types that are known to be integers will be sub-typed
 2050 from this type. Extended types will be subtyped from the `MTStringEventType`.

2051 9.3.11.1 Dependencies and Relationships

2052 • Mixes in `MTNumericDataItemType`, see See section 9.3.7

Table 76: MTNumericEventType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTNumericEventType				
IsAbstract	False				
ValueRank	-1				
DataType	Number				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	Type-Definition	Modeling-Rule
Subtype of DataItem Type (See [UA Part 08] Documentation)					
HasProperty	Variable	XmlId	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	Name	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Category	MTCategoryType	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MTTypeName	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MTSubTypeName	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SourceData	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SampleRate	Double	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Representation	MTRepresentation-Type	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	PeriodFilter	Float	PropertyType	Optional
HasMTClassType	Object	<MTDataItemClass>	MTDataItemClassType		Mandatory
HasMTSubClass-Type	Object	<MTDataItemSub-Class>	MTDataItemSubClassType		Optional
HasMT-Composition	Object	<MTComposition>	MTCompositionType		Optional
HasMTSource	Object	<BaseObject>	BaseObjectType		Optional
HasCondition	Event	<MTCondition>	MTConditionType		Optional
HasComponent	Object	Constraints	MTConstraintType		Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SignificantDigits	UInt16	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Statistic	MTStatisticType	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	NativeUnits	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	CoordinateSystem	MTCoordinate-SystemType	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	InitialValue	Double	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	ResetTrigger	MTResetTrigger-Type	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Units	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	MinimumDeltaFilter	Float	PropertyType	Optional

2053 9.3.12 Defintion of `MTSampleType`

2054 Data Items with category `SAMPLE`. The simplest mapping since all these types are floating
2055 point numeric data and comply with the **AnalogUnitType** from [UA Part 08] Amend-
2056 ment 1. In ammendment 1, the **EURange** is optional. **EngineeringUnits** for all
2057 `MTSampleType` Data Items.

2058 The **EURange** will becreated if the `Constraints` element exists and both `Maximum`
2059 and `Minimum` values are given.

Table 77: MTSampleType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTSampleType				
IsAbstract	False				
ValueRank	-1				
DataType	Number				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	Type-Definition	Modeling-Rule
Subtype of AnalogUnitType (See [UA Amend 1] Documentation)					
HasProperty	Variable	XmlId	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	Name	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Category	MTCategoryType	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MTTypeName	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MTSubTypeName	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SourceData	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SampleRate	Double	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Representation	MTRepresentation-Type	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	PeriodFilter	Float	PropertyType	Optional
HasMTClassType	Object	<MTDataItemClass>	MTDataItemClassType		Mandatory
HasMTSubClass-Type	Object	<MTDataItemSub-Class>	MTDataItemSubClassType		Optional
HasMT-Composition	Object	<MTComposition>	MTCompositionType		Optional
HasMTSource	Object	<BaseObject>	BaseObjectType		Optional
HasCondition	Event	<MTCondition>	MTConditionType		Optional
HasComponent	Object	Constraints	MTConstraintType		Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SignificantDigits	UInt16	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Statistic	MTStatisticType	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	NativeUnits	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	CoordinateSystem	MTCordinate-SystemType	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	InitialValue	Double	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	ResetTrigger	MTResetTrigger-Type	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Units	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	MinimumDeltaFilter	Float	PropertyType	Optional

2060 9.3.12.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2061 • `Supertype::AnalogUnitType`: All `DataItems` with category `SAMPLE`

2062 9.3.12.2 Dependencies and Relationships

- 2063 • Mixes in `MTNumericDataType`, see See section 9.3.7

2064 9.3.13 Defintion of `MTStringEventType`

2065 All data items with category **EVENT** where the data is freeform text. The data type will
2066 be set to `String` for all the sub-types. All extended type, regardless of controlled vocabu-
2067 laries, will use this base type unless proprietary enumerations are added to the nodeset as
2068 required by the builtin state event types inherited from `MTControlledVocabEvent-`
2069 `Type` (see 9.3.5).

2070 9.3.13.1 Dependencies and Relationships

- 2071 • Mixes in `MTDataType`, see See section 9.3.6

Table 78: MTStringEventType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTStringEventType				
IsAbstract	False				
ValueRank	-1				
DataType	String				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	Type-Definition	Modeling-Rule
Subtype of BaseDataVariableType (See [UA Part 08] Documentation)					
HasProperty	Variable	XmlId	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	Name	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Category	MTCategoryType	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MTypeNames	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MSubTypeNames	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SourceData	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SampleRate	Double	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Representation	MTRepresentation-Type	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	PeriodFilter	Float	PropertyType	Optional
HasMTCClassType	Object	<MTDataItemClass>	MTDataItemClassType		Mandatory
HasMTCSubClass-Type	Object	<MTDataItemSub-Class>	MTDataItemSubClassType		Optional
HasMTC-Composition	Object	<MTCComposition>	MTCCompositionType		Optional
HasMTCSource	Object	<BaseObject>	BaseObjectType		Optional
HasCondition	Event	<MTCCondition>	MTCConditionType		Optional
HasComponent	Object	Constraints	MTCConstraintType		Optional

2072 9.3.14 Defintion of MTThreeSpaceSampleType

2073 A special data item type that represents a three space coordinate. It uses a data type
 2074 with three fields, X, Y, and Z, where the coordinates are given in millimeters. The Engi-
 2075 neeringUnits will always be set to MMT in the UNECE convection.

2076 9.3.14.1 Dependencies and Relationships

2077 • Mixes in MTNumericDataItemType, see See section 9.3.7

Table 79: MTThreeSpaceSampleType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTThreeSpaceSampleType				
IsAbstract	False				
ValueRank	-1				
Data Type	ThreeSpaceSampleDataType				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	Type-Definition	Modeling-Rule
Subtype of BaseDataVariableType (See [UA Part 08] Documentation)					
HasProperty	Variable	XmlId	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	Name	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Category	MTCategoryType	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MTTypeName	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MTSubTypeName	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SourceData	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SampleRate	Double	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Representation	MTRepresentation-Type	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	PeriodFilter	Float	PropertyType	Optional
HasMTClassType	Object	<MTDataItemClass>	MTDataItemClassType		Mandatory
HasMTSubClass-Type	Object	<MTDataItemSub-Class>	MTDataItemSubClassType		Optional
HasMT-Composition	Object	<MTComposition>	MTCompositionType		Optional
HasMTSource	Object	<BaseObject>	BaseObjectType		Optional
HasCondition	Event	<MTCondition>	MTConditionType		Optional
HasComponent	Object	Constraints	MTConstraintType		Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SignificantDigits	UInt16	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Statistic	MTStatisticType	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	NativeUnits	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	CoordinateSystem	MTCordinate-SystemType	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	InitialValue	Double	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	ResetTrigger	MTResetTrigger-Type	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Units	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	MinimumDeltaFilter	Float	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	EngineeringUnits	EUInformation	PropertyType	Mandatory

2078 9.3.15 Defintion of `MessageDataType`

Table 80: `MessageDataType` `DataType`

Field	Type	Optional
NativeCode	String	Optional
Text	String	Mandatory

2079 9.3.16 Defintion of `ThreeSpaceSampleDataType`

2080 Represents a position in a three space coordinate system. The positions must be given in
2081 millimeters.

Table 81: `ThreeSpaceSampleDataType` `DataType`

Field	Type	Optional
X	Double	Mandatory
Y	Double	Mandatory
Z	Double	Mandatory

2082 9.3.16.1 Data Type Fields

- 2083 • `X::Double`: If not present, must be set to NaN.
- 2084 • `Y::Double`: If not present, must be set to NaN.
- 2085 • `Z::Double`: If not present, must be set to NaN.

2086 9.4 Conditions

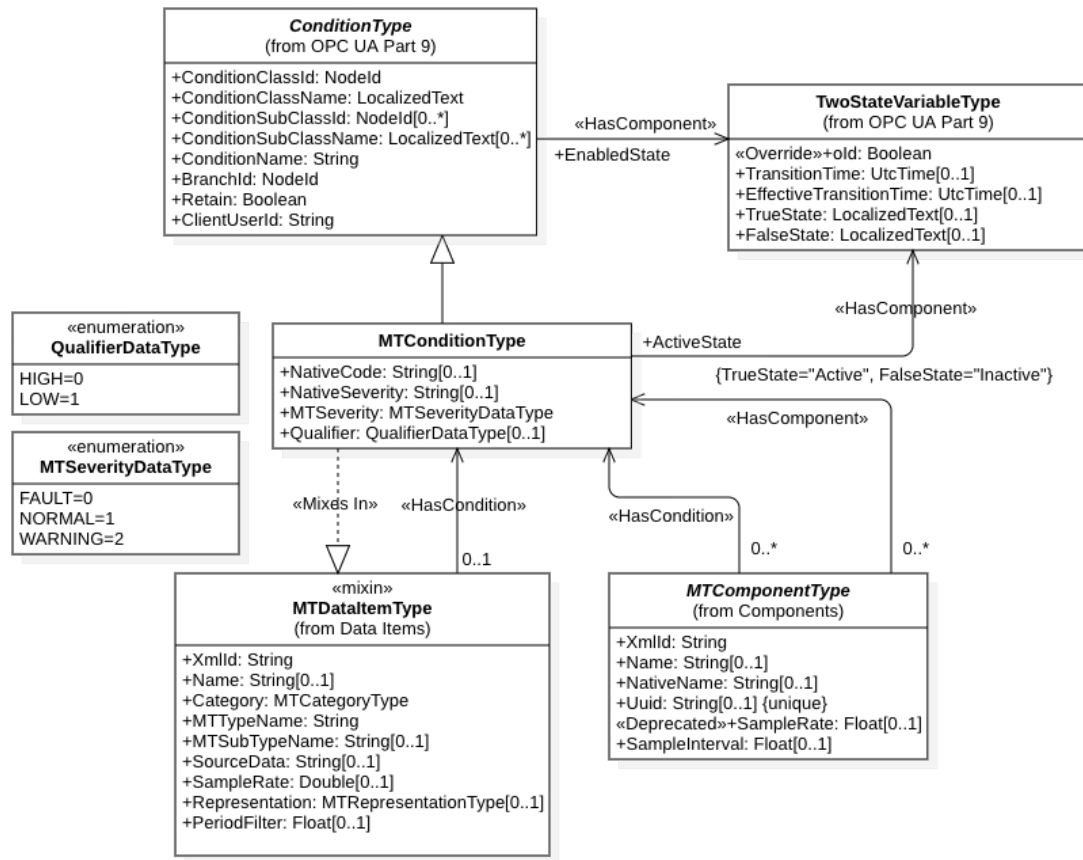


Figure 35: Conditions Diagram

2087 The Condition *DataItem* category in MTConnect is the mechanism for reporting
 2088 alarms on the machine classified by type and subType—such as an overload of a motor or
 2089 high temperature or a collection of system level warnings or faults.

2090 The earlier Alarm Event facility changed to a more state-based architecture where the
 2091 Condition was in one of the following three states: Normal – everything is fine, Warn-
 2092 ing – something is going wrong, but may self-correct, to Fault – a failure that needs man-
 2093 ual attention. The change was to address the semantic classification of *Alarms* and remove
 2094 ambiguity about the Alarm severity.

2095 The Condition model is different from the Event model for a lot of the same reasons OPC
 2096 has the *ConditionTypes* as *Object* and as an *Event*. In UA, the *Object* in the address
 2097 space keeps the state of the condition, whereas the individual **Alarms** are discrete events.

2098 In MTConnect, the Condition keeps the active state as well. In streaming (*sample*
 2099 *request*), the Conditions like an event stream. With a *current request*, all active condi-
 2100 tions are reported, even if there are multiple active conditions for a given type. Usually, an
 2101 Event can only have one value at a time, MTConnect Condition is different and can

2102 have multiple values, as in the case where there are multiple system alarms for a compo-
2103 nent or a syntax errors in a part program.

2104 The Condition uses the attribute `nativeCode` as you use the `BranchId` in the UA Con-
2105 dition. Each unique `nativeCode` is consider another activation of the Condition. Only
2106 when a Normal with no `nativeCode` cleared all active Conditions, or each are cleared
2107 separately (going back to a Normal state), does the condition report Normal when for a
2108 current request.

2109 Condition provides a stateful way of managing Alarms in a similar way to OPC UA,
2110 but since we are not addressing the requirements of an interactive model (we are read-
2111 only), we are only reporting on the states of the conditions.

2112 The documentation for the condition behavior in MTConnect can be found in Section 5.7
2113 and 5.8 of [MTConnect Part 3.0] and an overview in [MTConnect Part 2.0].

2114 The MTConnect Data Item with Category of `CONDITION` are mapped to the OPC UA
2115 *ConditionTypes* in [UA Part 09] with a **TwoStateVariableType** that represents the
2116 current state of all the active *branches* of this Condition.

2117 9.4.1 Defintion of MTConditionType

2118 The condition type is a derived from the UA `ContitionType`. The Normal state of
2119 the condition is indicated by the `ActiveState` if `FALSE`. The severity is used to represent
2120 the MTConnect condition states of Warning and Fault with the values of 500 and 1000
2121 respectively.

2122 An `MTConditionType` instance will be created for event MTConnect *DataItem* with
2123 a category of `CONDITION`. The `MTConditionType` instance will be instantiated
2124 with the **Retain** flag set to true when the condition **ActiveState** is true.

2125 The **BrowseName** of the condition uses the same naming convention as the MTConnect
2126 *DataItem* types with `Condition` appended as a suffix. For example the condition with
2127 type of `TEMPERATURE` will have the browse name of `TemperatureCondition` as
2128 opposed to the `MTSampleType` of `Temperature`.

2129 If a `Source` of the *DataItem* is provided, then the **HasCondition** relationship will be
2130 from the source *DataItem* to the `Condition` instance. Otherwise it will be related to the
2131 MTConnect *Component* containing the `MTComponentType` instance.

Table 82: MTConditionType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTConditionType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	Type-Definition	Modeling-Rule
Subtype of ConditionType (See [UA Part 09] Documentation)					
HasProperty	Variable	XmlId	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	Name	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Category	MTCategoryType	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MTTypeName	String	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	MTSubTypeName	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SourceData	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	SampleRate	Double	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	Representation	MTRepresentation-Type	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	PeriodFilter	Float	PropertyType	Optional
HasMTClassType	Object	<MTDataItemClass>	MTDataItemClassType		Mandatory
HasMTSubClass-Type	Object	<MTDataItemSub-Class>	MTDataItemSubClassType		Optional
HasMT-Composition	Object	<MTComposition>	MTCompositionType		Optional
HasMTSource	Object	<BaseObject>	BaseObjectType		Optional
HasCondition	Event	<MTCondition>	MTConditionType		Optional
HasComponent	Object	Constraints	MTConstraintType		Optional
HasProperty	Variable	NativeCode	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	NativeSeverity	String	PropertyType	Optional
HasProperty	Variable	MTSeverity	MTSeverityData-Type	PropertyType	Mandatory
HasProperty	Variable	Qualifier	QualifierDataType	PropertyType	Optional
HasComponent	Variable	ActiveState	LocalizedText	TwoState-VariableType	Mandatory

2132 9.4.1.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2133 • `NativeCode::String`: When instantiated in the address space this will repre-
 2134 sent the `NativeCode` of the last *Event* that was received. When the `ActiveState`
 2135 becomes `False` and becomes inactive, then the `NativeCode` will be cleared.

2136 • `NativeSeverity::String`: When instantiated in the address space this will
 2137 represent the `NativeSeverity` of the last *Event* that was received. When the
 2138 `ActiveState` becomes `False` and becomes inactive, then the `NativeSeverity` will
 2139 be cleared.

2140 • **Allowable Values** for `MTSeverityDataType`

Table 83: MTSeverityDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
FAULT	0
NORMAL	1
WARNING	2

- 2141 • **Allowable Values** for QualifierDataType

Table 84: QualifierDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
HIGH	0
LOW	1

2142 9.4.1.2 Dependencies and Relationships

- 2143 • Mixes in MTDataType, see See section 9.3.6

2144 9.5 Data Item Types

2145 The data item types represent the MTConnect types as defined in Section 8 of the MT-
 2146 Connect Standard Part 2 [MTConnect Part 2.0] and are represented using the XML `type`
 2147 attribute. The type and sub-type relationships are given in the standard and are not
 2148 documented in the companion specification.

2149 The model of the types is similar to the OPC UA condition classes as given in OPC UA
 2150 Part 9 [UA Part 09]. Since MTConnect conditions use the same type system as the data
 2151 items, the representation of the data item type will be derived from the `BaseCondi-`
 2152 `tionClassType`. The MTConnect Types will not use the `...ClassType`, but will
 2153 be the name as specified in the MTConnect standard with `Type` appended.

2154 For example: The `CONTROLLER_MODE` will be given as the `ControllerModeType`.
 2155 The relationship to the *DataItem* OPC UA types are presented so that it will be easier to
 2156 map the MTConnect types to the correct super class as given in the OPC UA model.

2157 9.5.1 Defintion of MTDataTypeClassType

2158 Abstract base class for all the data item class types. The names are created by pascal typing
 2159 the names and then generating appending `Type`.

Table 85: MTDatItemClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTDataItemClassType				
IsAbstract	True				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of BaseConditionClassType (See [UA Part 09] Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MTSampleClassType		See section 9.6.1	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MConditionClassType		See section 9.3.3	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MTEventClassType		See section 9.3.8	

2160 9.5.2 Defintion of MTMessageClassType

Table 86: MTMessageClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTMessageClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTEventClassType (See Data Items Documentation)					

2161 9.6 Sample Data Item Types

2162 The MTConnect Standard has the definitions of `Samples` in Section 8.1 of the MTConnect
 2163 Standard Part 2 [MTConnect Part 2.0] and the definition of the values can be found
 2164 in Section 5.3 of MTConnect Standard Part 3 [MTConnect Part 3.0].

2165 The description of each type was copied from the MTConnect Standard, but this not the
 2166 definitive text for each type. For authoritative normative text, please refer to the sources
 2167 [MTConnect Part 2.0] and [MTConnect Part 3.0].

2168 9.6.1 Defintion of MTSampleClassType

2169 The base type class for all data items with a `category` of `SAMPLE`.

Table 87: MTSampleClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTSampleClassType				
IsAbstract	True				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemClassType (See Data Item Types Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MassClassType		See section 9.6.21	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PathFeedrateClassType		See section 9.6.22	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PathPositionClassType		See section 9.6.23	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PHClassType		See section 9.6.24	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PositionClassType		See section 9.6.25	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PowerFactorClassType		See section 9.6.26	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PressureClassType		See section 9.6.27	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ProcessTimerClassType		See section 9.6.28	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ResistanceClassType		See section 9.6.29	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	RotaryVelocityClassType		See section 9.6.30	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	SoundLevelClassType		See section 9.6.31	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	StrainClassType		See section 9.6.32	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	TemperatureClassType		See section 9.6.33	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	TensionClassType		See section 9.6.34	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	TiltClassType		See section 9.6.35	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	TorqueClassType		See section 9.6.36	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	VoltAmpereClassType		See section 9.6.37	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	VelocityClassType		See section 9.6.38	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	VoltAmpereReactiveClassType		See section 9.6.39	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ViscosityClassType		See section 9.6.40	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	VoltageClassType		See section 9.6.41	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	WattageClassType		See section 9.6.42	
Continued...					

References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LoadClassType		See section 9.6.2	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AccelerationClassType		See section 9.6.3	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AccumulatedTimeClassType		See section 9.6.4	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AngularAccelerationClassType		See section 9.6.5	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AngularVelocityClassType		See section 9.6.6	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AmperageClassType		See section 9.6.7	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AngleClassType		See section 9.6.8	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AxisFeedrateClassType		See section 9.6.9	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ClockTimeClassType		See section 9.6.10	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ConcentrationClassType		See section 9.6.11	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ConductivityClassType		See section 9.6.12	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	DisplacementClassType		See section 9.6.13	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ElectricalEnergyClassType		See section 9.6.14	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	EquipmentTimerClassType		See section 9.6.15	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	FillLevelClassType		See section 9.6.16	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	FlowClassType		See section 9.6.17	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	FrequencyClassType		See section 9.6.18	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LengthClassType		See section 9.6.19	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LinearForceClassType		See section 9.6.20	

2170 9.6.2 Defintion of LoadClassType

2171 The measurement of the actual versus the standard rating of a piece of equipment. *PERCENT*

Table 88: LoadClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LoadClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2172 9.6.3 Defintion of AccelerationClassType

2173 Rate of change of velocity. $\frac{MILLIMETER}{SECOND^2}$

Table 89: AccelerationClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AccelerationClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2174 9.6.4 Defintion of AccumulatedTimeClassType

2175 The measurement of accumulated time for an activity or event. *SECOND*

Table 90: AccumulatedTimeClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AccumulatedTimeClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2176 9.6.5 Defintion of AngularAccelerationClassType

2177 Rate of change of angular velocity. $\frac{DEGREE}{SECOND^2}$

Table 91: AngularAccelerationClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AngularAccelerationClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2178 9.6.6 Defintion of AngularVelocityClassType

2179 Rate of change of angular position. $\frac{DEGREE}{SECOND}$

Table 92: AngularVelocityClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AngularVelocityClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2180 9.6.7 Defintion of AmperageClassType

2181 The measurement of electrical current. *AMPERE*

Table 93: AmperageClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AmperageClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2182 9.6.8 Defintion of AngleClassType

2183 The measurement of angular position. *DEGREE*

Table 94: AngleClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AngleClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2184 9.6.9 Defintion of AxisFeedrateClassType

2185 The feedrate of a linear axis. $\frac{MILLIMETER}{SECOND}$

Table 95: AxisFeedrateClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AxisFeedrateClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2186 9.6.10 Defintion of ClockTimeClassType

2187 The value provided by a timing device at a specific point in time. *TIMESTAMP*

Table 96: ClockTimeClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ClockTimeClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2188 9.6.11 Defintion of ConcentrationClassType

2189 Percentage of one component within a mixture of components. *PERCENT*

Table 97: ConcentrationClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ConcentrationClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2190 9.6.12 Defintion of ConductivityClassType

2191 The ability of a material to conduct electricity. $\frac{SIEMENS}{METER}$

Table 98: ConductivityClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ConductivityClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2192 9.6.13 Defintion of DisplacementClassType

2193 The change in position of an object. *MILLIMETER*

Table 99: DisplacementClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	DisplacementClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2194 9.6.14 Defintion of ElectricalEnergyClassType

2195 The measurement of electrical energy consumption by a component. $WATT \times SECOND$

Table 100: ElectricalEnergyClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ElectricalEnergyClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2196 9.6.15 Defintion of EquipmentTimerClassType

2197 The measurement of the amount of time a SECOND piece of equipment or a sub-part of
 2198 a piece of equipment has performed specific activities. Often used to determine when
 2199 maintenance may be required for the equipment.

2200 Multiple subTypes of EQUIPMENT_TIMER MAY be defined. A subType MUST always
 2201 be specified.

2202 *SECOND*

Table 101: EquipmentTimerClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	EquipmentTimerClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2203 9.6.16 Defintion of FillLevelClassType

2204 The measurement of the amount of a substance remaining compared to the planned maxi-
 2205 mum amount of that substance. *PERCENT*

Table 102: FillLevelClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	FillLevelClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2206 9.6.17 Defintion of FlowClassType

2207 The rate of flow of a fluid. $\frac{LITER}{SECOND}$

Table 103: FlowClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	FlowClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2208 9.6.18 Defintion of FrequencyClassType

2209 The measurement of the number of occurrences of a repeating event per unit time. *HERTZ*

Table 104: FrequencyClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	FrequencyClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2210 9.6.19 Defintion of LengthClassType

2211 The length of an object. *MILLIMETER*

Table 105: LengthClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LengthClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2212 9.6.19.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2213 • `Supertype::MTSampleClassType`: The length of an object

2214 9.6.20 Defintion of LinearForceClassType

2215 The measure of the push or pull introduced by an actuator or exerted on an object. *NEWTON*

Table 106: LinearForceClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LinearForceClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2216 9.6.21 Defintion of MassClassType

2217 The measurement of the mass of an object(s) or an amount of material. *KILOGRAM*

Table 107: MassClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MassClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2218 9.6.22 Defintion of PathFeedrateClassType

2219 The feedrate for the axes, or a single axis, associated with a Path component a vector.

2220 $\frac{\text{MILLIMETER}}{\text{SECOND}}$

Table 108: PathFeedrateClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PathFeedrateClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2221 9.6.23 Defintion of PathPositionClassType

2222 A measured or calculated position of a control point associated with a Controller
2223 element, or PATH element if provided, of a piece of equipment.

2224 The control point MUST be reported as a set of space-delimited floating-point numbers
2225 representing a point in 3-D space. The position of the control point MUST be reported
2226 in units of MILLIMETER and listed in order of X, Y, and Z referenced to the coordinate
2227 system of the piece of equipment.

2228 *MILLIMETER*(\mathbb{R}^3)**Table 109:** PathPositionClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PathPositionClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2229 **9.6.24 Defintion of PHClassType**2230 The measure of the acidity or alkalinity. *PH***Table 110:** PHClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PHClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2231 **9.6.25 Defintion of PositionClassType**

2232 A calculated or measured position related to a Component element.

2233 POSITION SHOULD be further defined with a coordinateSystem attribute. If a coordinateSystem attribute is not specified, the position of the control point MUST be reported in MACHINE coordinates.

2236 *MILLIMETER***Table 111:** PositionClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PositionClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2237 9.6.26 Definition of PowerFactorClassType

2238 The measurement of the ratio of real power flowing to a load to the apparent power in that
2239 AC circuit. *PERCENT*

Table 112: PowerFactorClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PowerFactorClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2240 9.6.27 Definition of PressureClassType

2241 The force per unit area exerted by a gas or liquid. *PASCAL*

Table 113: PressureClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PressureClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2242 9.6.28 Definition of ProcessTimerClassType

2243 The measurement of the amount of time a piece of equipment has performed different
2244 types of activities associated with the process being performed at that piece of equipment.
2245 Multiple subtypes of PROCESS_TIMER may be defined.

2246 Typically, PROCESS_TIMER SHOULD be modeled as a data item for the Device ele-
2247 ment, but MAY be modeled for either a Controller or Path Structural Element in the XML
2248 document. A subType MUST always be specified.

2249 *SECOND*

Table 114: ProcessTimerClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ProcessTimerClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2250 9.6.29 Defintion of ResistanceClassType

2251 The degree to which a substance opposes the passage of an electric current. *OHM*

Table 115: ResistanceClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ResistanceClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2252 9.6.30 Defintion of RotaryVelocityClassType

2253 The rotational speed of a rotary axis. $\frac{REVOLUTION}{MINUTE}$

Table 116: RotaryVelocityClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	RotaryVelocityClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2254 9.6.31 Defintion of SoundLevelClassType

2255 Measurement of a sound level or sound pressure level relative to atmospheric pressure.

2256 *DECIBEL*

Table 117: SoundLevelClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	SoundLevelClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2257 9.6.32 Defintion of StrainClassType

2258 The amount of deformation per unit length of an object when a load is applied. *PERCENT*

Table 118: StrainClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	StrainClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2259 9.6.33 Defintion of TemperatureClassType

2260 The measurement of temperature. *CELSIUS*

Table 119: TemperatureClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	TemperatureClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2261 9.6.34 Defintion of TensionClassType

2262 A measurement of a force that stretches or elongates an object. *NEWTON*

Table 120: TensionClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	TensionClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2263 9.6.35 Defintion of TiltClassType

2264 A measurement of angular displacement. *MICRO · RADIAN*

Table 121: TiltClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	TiltClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2265 9.6.36 Defintion of TorqueClassType

2266 The turning force exerted on an object or by an object. *NEWTON × METER*

Table 122: TorqueClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	TorqueClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2267 9.6.37 Defintion of VoltAmpereClassType

2268 The measure of the apparent power in an electrical circuit, equal to the product of root-
 2269 mean-square (RMS) voltage and RMS current (commonly referred to as VA). *VOLT ×*
 2270 *AMPERE*

Table 123: VoltAmpereClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	VoltAmpereClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2271 9.6.38 Defintion of VelocityClassType

2272 The rate of change of position. $\frac{MILLIMETER}{SECOND}$

Table 124: VelocityClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	VelocityClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2273 9.6.39 Defintion of VoltAmpereReactiveClassType

2274 The measurement of reactive power in an AC electrical circuit (commonly referred to as
2275 VAR). $VOLT \times AMPERE(Reactive)$

Table 125: VoltAmpereReactiveClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	VoltAmpereReactiveClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2276 9.6.40 Defintion of ViscosityClassType

2277 A measurement of a fluid's resistance to flow. $PASCAL \times SECOND$.

Table 126: ViscosityClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ViscosityClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2278 9.6.41 Defintion of VoltageClassType

2279 The measurement of electrical potential between two points. *VOLT*

Table 127: VoltageClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	VoltageClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2280 9.6.42 Defintion of WattageClassType

2281 The measurement of power flowing through or dissipated by an electrical circuit or piece
2282 of equipment. *WATT*

Table 128: WattageClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	WattageClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTSampleClassType (See section 9.6.1)					

2283 9.7 Controlled Vocab Data Item Types

2284 The MTConnect Standard has the definitions of *Events* in Section 8.2 of the MTConnect
2285 Standard Part 2 [[MTConnect Part 2.0](#)] and the definition of the values can be found in
2286 Section 5.5 of MTConnect Standard Part 3 [[MTConnect Part 3.0](#)].

2287 The description of each type was copied from the MTConnect Standard, but this not the
2288 definitive text for each type. For authoritative normative text, please refer to the sources
2289 [[MTConnect Part 2.0](#)] and [[MTConnect Part 3.0](#)].

2290 9.7.1 Defintion of **MTControlledVocabEventClassType**

2291 The abstract base type for controlled events that represent states that are provided in
 2292 related enumerations. These data items will be represented in an object of type MT-
 2293 ControlledVocabEventType derived from the OPC UA type **MultiStateVal-**
 2294 **ueDiscreteType**

Table 129: MTControlledVocabEventClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTControlledVocabEventClassType				
IsAbstract	True				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTEventClassType (See Data Items Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	DirectionClassType		See section 9.7.13	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	DoorStateClassType		See section 9.7.14	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	EmergencyStopClassType		See section 9.7.15	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	EndOfBarClassType		See section 9.7.16	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	EquipmentModeClassType		See section 9.7.17	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	FunctionalModeClassType		See section 9.7.18	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	SpindleInterlockClassType		See section 9.7.19	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PathModeClassType		See section 9.7.20	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PowerStateClassType		See section 9.7.21	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ProgramEditClassType		See section 9.7.22	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	RotaryModeClassType		See section 9.7.23	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	InterfaceStateClassType		See section 9.7.24	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MaterialFeedClassType		See section 9.7.25	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MaterialChangeClassType		See section 9.7.26	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MaterialRetractClassType		See section 9.7.27	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MaterialLoadClassType		See section 9.7.28	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MaterialUnloadClassType		See section 9.7.29	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	OpenDoorClassType		See section 9.7.30	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	CloseDoorClassType		See section 9.7.31	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	OpenChuckClassType		See section 9.7.32	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	CloseChuckClassType		See section 9.7.33	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PartChangeClassType		See section 9.7.34	
Continued...					

References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ActuatorStateClassType		See section 9.7.2	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AvailabilityClassType		See section 9.7.3	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AxisCouplingClassType		See section 9.7.4	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AxisInterlockClassType		See section 9.7.5	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AxisStateClassType		See section 9.7.6	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ChuckInterlockClassType		See section 9.7.7	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ChuckStateClassType		See section 9.7.8	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ControllerModeClassType		See section 9.7.9	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ExecutionClassType		See section 9.7.10	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	CompositionStateClassType		See section 9.7.11	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ControllerModeOverrideClassType		See section 9.7.12	

2295 9.7.2 Defintion of ActuatorStateClassType

2296 Represents the operational state of an apparatus for moving or controlling.

Table 130: ActuatorStateClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ActuatorStateClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	ActiveStateDataType	ActiveStateDataType	Mandatory

2297 9.7.2.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2298 • **Allowable Values** for ActiveStateDataType

Table 131: ActiveStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
INACTIVE	1

2299 9.7.3 Defintion of AvailabilityClassType

2300 Represents the Agent's ability to communicate with the data source. This **MUST** be provided for a Device Element and **MAY** be provided for any other Structural Element.

2301

Table 132: AvailabilityClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AvailabilityClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	AvailabilityDataType	AvailabilityDataType	Mandatory

2302 9.7.3.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2303 • **Allowable Values** for AvailabilityDataType

Table 133: AvailabilityDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
AVAILABLE	0
UNAVAILABLE	1

2304 9.7.4 Defintion of AxisCouplingClassType

2305 Describes the way the axes will be associated to each other. This is used in conjunction
2306 with COUPLED_AXES to indicate the way they are interacting.

2307 The coupling **MUST** be viewed from the perspective of a specific axis. Therefore, a MAS-
2308 TER coupling indicates that this axis is the master for the COUPLED_AXES.

Table 134: AxisCouplingClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AxisCouplingClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	AxisCouplingDataType	AxisCouplingData- Type	Mandatory

2309 9.7.4.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2310 • **Allowable Values** for AxisCouplingDataType

Table 135: AxisCouplingDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
MASTER	0
SLAVE	1
SYNCHRONOUS	2
TANDEM	3

2311 9.7.5 Defintion of AxisInterlockClassType

2312 An indicator of the state of the axis lockout function when power has been removed and
 2313 the axis is allowed to move freely.

Table 136: AxisInterlockClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AxisInterlockClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	ActiveStateDataType	ActiveStateDataType	Mandatory

2314 9.7.5.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2315 • **Allowable Values** for ActiveStateDataType

Table 137: ActiveStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
INACTIVE	1

2316 9.7.6 Defintion of AxisStateClassType

2317 An indicator of the controlled state of a LINEAR or ROTARY component representing an
 2318 axis.

Table 138: AxisStateClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AxisStateClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	AxisStateDataType	AxisStateDataType	Mandatory

2319 9.7.6.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2320 • **Allowable Values** for AxisStateDataType

Table 139: AxisStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
HOME	0
PARKED	1
STOPPED	2
TRAVEL	3

2321 9.7.7 Defintion of ChuckInterlockClassType

- 2322 An indication of the state of an interlock function or control logic state intended to prevent
2323 the associated Chuck composition or function from being operated.

Table 140: ChuckInterlockClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ChuckInterlockClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	ActiveStateDataType	ActiveStateDataType	Mandatory

2324 9.7.7.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2325 • **Allowable Values** for ActiveStateDataType

Table 141: ActiveStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
INACTIVE	1

2326 9.7.8 Defintion of ChuckStateClassType

2327 An indication of the operating state of a mechanism that holds a part or stock material
 2328 during a manufacturing process. It may also represent a mechanism that holds any other
 2329 mechanism in place within a piece of equipment.

Table 142: ChuckStateClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ChuckStateClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	OpenStateDataType	OpenStateDataType	Mandatory

2330 9.7.8.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2331 • **Allowable Values** for OpenStateDataType

Table 143: OpenStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
CLOSED	0
OPEN	1
UNLATCHED	2

2332 9.7.9 Defintion of ControllerModeClassType

2333 The current mode of the Controller component.

Table 144: ControllerModeClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ControllerModeClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	Modeling-Rule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	ControllerModeDataType	ControllerMode-DataType	Mandatory

2334 9.7.9.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2335 • **Allowable Values** for ControllerModeDataType

Table 145: ControllerModeDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
AUTOMATIC	0
EDIT	1
MANUAL	2
MANUAL_DATA_INPUT	3
SEMI_AUTOMATIC	4

2336 9.7.10 Defintion of ExecutionClassType

- 2337 The execution status of the Controller or Path.

Table 146: ExecutionClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ExecutionClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	ExecutionDataType	ExecutionDataType	Mandatory

2338 9.7.10.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2339 • **Allowable Values** for ExecutionDataType

Table 147: ExecutionDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
FEED_HOLD	1
INTERRUPTED	2
OPTIONAL_STOP	3
READY	4
PROGRAM_COMPLETED	5
PROGRAM_STOPPED	6
STOPPED	7

2340 9.7.11 Defintion of CompositionStateClassType

2341 An indication of the operating condition of a mechanism represented by a Composition
2342 type element.

2343 A subType **MUST** always be specified.

2344 A compositionId **MUST** always be specified.

Table 148: CompositionStateClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	CompositionStateClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	Modeling-Rule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	Enum Values	CompositionStateDataType	CompositionState- DataType	Mandatory

2345 9.7.11.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2346 • **Allowable Values** for CompositionStateDataType

Table 149: CompositionStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
CLOSED	1
DOWN	2
INACTIVE	3
LEFT	4
OFF	5
ON	6
OPEN	7
RIGHT	8
TRANSITIONING	9
UNLATCHED	10
UP	11

2347 9.7.12 Defintion of ControllerModeOverrideClassType

2348 A setting or operator selection that changes the behavior of a piece of equipment.

Table 150: ControllerModeOverrideClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ControllerModeOverrideClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	OnOffDataType	OnOffDataType	Mandatory

2349 9.7.12.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2350 • **Allowable Values** for OnOffDataType

Table 151: OnOffDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
OFF	0
ON	1

2351 9.7.13 Defintion of DirectionClassType

2352 The direction of motion. A subType MUST always be specified.

Table 152: DirectionClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	DirectionClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	DirectionDataType	DirectionDataType	Mandatory

2353 9.7.13.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2354 • **Allowable Values** for DirectionDataType

Table 153: DirectionDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
CLOCKWISE	0
COUNTER_CLOCKWISE	1
NEGATIVE	2
POSITIVE	3

2355 9.7.14 Defintion of DoorStateClassType

2356 The opened or closed state of the door.

Table 154: DoorStateClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	DoorStateClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	OpenStateDataType	OpenStateDataType	Mandatory

2357 9.7.14.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2358 • **Allowable Values** for OpenStateDataType

Table 155: OpenStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
CLOSED	0
OPEN	1
UNLATCHED	2

2359 9.7.15 Defintion of EmergencyStopClassType

2360 The current state of the emergency stop signal.

Table 156: EmergencyStopClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	EmergencyStopClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	Modeling-Rule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	EmergencyStopDataType	EmergencyStop-DataType	Mandatory

2361 9.7.15.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2362 • **Allowable Values** for EmergencyStopDataType

Table 157: EmergencyStopDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ARMED	0
TRIGGERED	1

2363 9.7.16 Defintion of EndOfBarClassType

2364 An indication of whether the end of a piece of bar stock being feed by a bar feeder has
2365 been reached.

Table 158: EndOfBarClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	EndOfBarClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	YesNoDataType	YesNoDataType	Mandatory

2366 9.7.16.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2367 • **Allowable Values** for YesNoDataType

Table 159: YesNoDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
NO	0
YES	1

2368 9.7.17 Defintion of EquipmentModeClassType

2369 An indication that a piece of equipment, or a sub-part of a piece of equipment, is perform-
 2370 ing specific types of activities.

2371 A subType **MUST** always be specified.

Table 160: EquipmentModeClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	EquipmentModeClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	OnOffDataType	OnOffDataType	Mandatory

2372 9.7.17.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2373 • **Allowable Values** for OnOffDataType

Table 161: OnOffDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
OFF	0
ON	1

2374 9.7.18 Defintion of FunctionalModeClassType

2375 The current intended production status of the device or component.

2376 Typically, the FUNCTIONAL_MODE SHOULD be modeled as a data item for the Device
2377 element, but MAY be modeled for any Structural Element in the XML document.

Table 162: FunctionalModeClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	FunctionalModeClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	Modeling-Rule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	FunctionalModeDataType	FunctionalMode-DataType	Mandatory

2378 9.7.18.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2379 • **Allowable Values** for FunctionalModeDataType

Table 163: FunctionalModeDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
MAINTENANCE	0
PRODUCTION	1
PROCESS_DEVELOPMENT	2
SETUP	3
TEARDOWN	4

2380 9.7.19 Defintion of SpindleInterlockClassType

2381 An indication of the status of the spindle for a piece of equipment when power has been
2382 removed and it is free to rotate.

Table 164: SpindleInterlockClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	SpindleInterlockClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	ActiveStateDataType	ActiveStateDataType	Mandatory

2383 9.7.19.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2384 • **Allowable Values** for ActiveStateDataType

Table 165: ActiveStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
INACTIVE	1

2385 9.7.20 Defintion of PathModeClassType

- 2386 Describes the operational relationship between a *PATH Structural Element* and another
 2387 *PATH Structural Element* for pieces of equipment comprised of multiple logical groupings
 2388 of controlled axes or other logical operations.

Table 166: PathModeClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PathModeClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	PathModeDataType	PathModeDataType	Mandatory

2389 9.7.20.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2390 • **Allowable Values** for PathModeDataType

Table 167: PathModeDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
INDEPENDENT	0
MASTER	1
MIRROR	2
SYNCHRONOUS	3

2391 9.7.21 Defintion of PowerStateClassType

2392 The indication of the status of the source of energy for a *Structural Element* to allow it to
 2393 perform its intended function or the state of an enabling signal providing permission for
 2394 the *Structural Element* to perform its functions.

2395 DEPRECATION WARNING: `PowerState` may be deprecated in the future.

Table 168: PowerStateClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PowerStateClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTCControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	OnOffDataType	OnOffDataType	Mandatory

2396 9.7.21.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2397 • **Allowable Values** for `OnOffDataType`

Table 169: OnOffDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
OFF	0
ON	1

2398 9.7.22 Defintion of ProgramEditClassType

2399 An indication of the status of the `Controller` component's program editing mode.

2400 On many controls, a program can be edited while another program is currently being
 2401 executed.

Table 170: ProgramEditClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ProgramEditClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	ProgramEditDataType	ProgramEditDataType	Mandatory

2402 9.7.22.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2403
 - **Allowable Values** for ProgramEditDataType

Table 171: ProgramEditDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
NOT_READY	1
READY	2

2404 9.7.23 Defintion of RotaryModeClassType

- 2405 The current operating mode for a Rotary type axis.

Table 172: RotaryModeClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	RotaryModeClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	RotaryModeDataType	RotaryModeDataType	Mandatory

2406 9.7.23.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2407
 - **Allowable Values** for RotaryModeDataType

Table 173: RotaryModeDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
CONTOUR	0
INDEX	1
SPINDLE	2

2408 9.7.24 Defintion of InterfaceStateClassType

2409 The current functional or operational state of an Interface type element indicating whether
2410 the Interface is active or not currently functioning.

Table 174: InterfaceStateClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	InterfaceStateClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	TypeDefinition	Modeling-Rule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	InterfaceStatusDataType	InterfaceStatusData-Type	Mandatory

2411 9.7.24.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2412 • **Allowable Values** for InterfaceStatusDataType

Table 175: InterfaceStatusDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
DISABLED	0
ENABLED	1

2413 9.7.25 Defintion of MaterialFeedClassType

2414 Service to advance material or feed product to a piece of equipment from a continuous or
2415 bulk source.

Table 176: MaterialFeedClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MaterialFeedClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	InterfaceStateDataType	InterfaceStateData-Type	Mandatory

2416 9.7.25.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2417 • **Allowable Values** for InterfaceStateDataType

Table 177: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
COMPLETE	1
FAIL	2
NOT_READY	4
READY	5

2418 9.7.26 Defintion of MaterialChangeClassType

- 2419 Service to change the type of material or product being loaded or fed to a piece of equip-
2420 ment.

Table 178: MaterialChangeClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MaterialChangeClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	InterfaceStateDataType	InterfaceStateData-Type	Mandatory

2421 9.7.26.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2422 • **Allowable Values** for InterfaceStateDataType

Table 179: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
COMPLETE	1
FAIL	2
NOT_READY	4
READY	5

2423 9.7.27 Defintion of MaterialRetractClassType

2424 Service to remove or retract material or product.

Table 180: MaterialRetractClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MaterialRetractClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	InterfaceStateDataType	InterfaceStateData-Type	Mandatory

2425 9.7.27.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2426 • **Allowable Values** for InterfaceStateDataType

Table 181: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
COMPLETE	1
FAIL	2
NOT_READY	4
READY	5

2427 9.7.28 Defintion of MaterialLoadClassType

2428 Service to load a piece of material or product.

Table 182: MaterialLoadClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MaterialLoadClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	InterfaceStateDataType	InterfaceStateData-Type	Mandatory

2429 9.7.28.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2430 • **Allowable Values** for InterfaceStateDataType

Table 183: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
COMPLETE	1
FAIL	2
NOT_READY	4
READY	5

2431 9.7.29 Definition of MaterialUnloadClassType

- 2432 Service to unload a piece of material or product.

Table 184: MaterialUnloadClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MaterialUnloadClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	InterfaceStateDataType	InterfaceStateData-Type	Mandatory

2433 9.7.29.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2434 • **Allowable Values** for InterfaceStateDataType

Table 185: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
COMPLETE	1
FAIL	2
NOT_READY	4
READY	5

2435 9.7.30 Defintion of OpenDoorClassType

2436 Service to open a door.

Table 186: OpenDoorClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	OpenDoorClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	InterfaceStateDataType	InterfaceStateData-Type	Mandatory

2437 9.7.30.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2438 • **Allowable Values** for InterfaceStateDataType

Table 187: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
COMPLETE	1
FAIL	2
NOT_READY	4
READY	5

2439 9.7.31 Defintion of CloseDoorClassType

2440 Service to close a door.

Table 188: CloseDoorClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	CloseDoorClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	InterfaceStateDataType	InterfaceStateData-Type	Mandatory

2441 9.7.31.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2442
 - **Allowable Values** for InterfaceStateDataType

Table 189: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
COMPLETE	1
FAIL	2
NOT_READY	4
READY	5

2443 9.7.32 Defintion of OpenChuckClassType

- 2444 Service to open a chuck.

Table 190: OpenChuckClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	OpenChuckClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	InterfaceStateDataType	InterfaceStateData-Type	Mandatory

2445 9.7.32.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2446
 - **Allowable Values** for InterfaceStateDataType

Table 191: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
COMPLETE	1
FAIL	2
NOT_READY	4
READY	5

2447 9.7.33 Defintion of CloseChuckClassType

2448 Service to close a chuck.

Table 192: CloseChuckClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	CloseChuckClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	InterfaceStateDataType	InterfaceStateData-Type	Mandatory

2449 9.7.33.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2450 • **Allowable Values** for InterfaceStateDataType

Table 193: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
COMPLETE	1
FAIL	2
NOT_READY	4
READY	5

2451 9.7.34 Defintion of PartChangeClassType

2452 Service to change the part or product associated with a piece of equipment to a different
 2453 part or product.

Table 194: PartChangeClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PartChangeClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTControlledVocabEventClassType (See section 9.7.1)					
HasProperty	Variable	EnumValues	InterfaceStateDataType	InterfaceStateData-Type	Mandatory

2454 9.7.34.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

- 2455 • **Allowable Values** for InterfaceStateDataType

Table 195: InterfaceStateDataType Enumeration

Name	Index
ACTIVE	0
COMPLETE	1
FAIL	2
NOT_READY	4
READY	5

2456 9.8 Numeric Event Data Item Types

2457 The MTConnect Standard has the definitions of `Events` in Section 8.2 of the MTConnect
 2458 Standard Part 2 [[MTConnect Part 2.0](#)] and the definition of the values can be found in
 2459 Section 5.5 of MTConnect Standard Part 3 [[MTConnect Part 3.0](#)].

2460 The description of each type was copied from the MTConnect Standard, but this not the
 2461 definitive text for each type. For authoritative normative text, please refer to the sources
 2462 [[MTConnect Part 2.0](#)] and [[MTConnect Part 3.0](#)].

2463 9.8.1 Defintion of `MTNumericEventClassType`

2464 The root type for all of the event types that have numeric CDATA.

Table 196: MTNumericEventClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTNumericEventClassType				
IsAbstract	True				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTEventClassType (See Data Items Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AxisFeedrateOverrideClassType		See section 9.8.2	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	BlockCountClassType		See section 9.8.3	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	HardnessClassType		See section 9.8.4	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LineNumberClassType		See section 9.8.5	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PartCountClassType		See section 9.8.6	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	RotaryVelocityOverrideClassType		See section 9.8.7	

2465 9.8.2 Defintion of AxisFeedrateOverrideClassType

2466 The value of a signal or calculation issued to adjust the feedrate of an individual linear
2467 type axis.

2468 The value provided for AXIS_FEEDRATE_OVERRIDE is expressed as a percentage of
2469 the designated feedrate for the axis.

2470 When AXIS_FEEDRATE_OVERRIDE is applied, the resulting commanded feedrate for
2471 the axis is limited to the value of the original feedrate multiplied by the value of the
2472 AXIS_FEEDRATE_OVERRIDE.

2473 There MAY be different subtypes of AXIS_FEEDRATE_OVERRIDE; each representing
2474 an override value for a designated subtype of feedrate depending on the state of operation
2475 of the axis. The subtypes of operation of an axis are currently defined as PROGRAMMED,
2476 JOG, and RAPID.

Table 197: AxisFeedrateOverrideClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AxisFeedrateOverrideClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTNumericEventClassType (See section 9.8.1)					

2477 9.8.3 Defintion of BlockCountClassType

2478 The total count of the number of blocks of program code that have been executed since
2479 execution started.

2480 BLOCK_COUNT counts blocks of program code executed regardless of program structure
 2481 (e.g., looping or branching within the program).

2482 The starting value for BLOCK_COUNT MAY be established by an initial value provided in
 2483 the Constraint element defined for the data item.

Table 198: BlockCountClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	BlockCountClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTNumericEventClassType (See section 9.8.1)					

2484 9.8.4 Defintion of HardnessClassType

2485 The measurement of the hardness of a material.

2486 The measurement does not provide a unit.

2487 A subType MUST always be specified to designate the hardness scale associated with
 2488 the measurement.

Table 199: HardnessClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	HardnessClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTNumericEventClassType (See section 9.8.1)					

2489 9.8.5 Defintion of LineNumberClassType

2490 A reference to the position of a block of program code within a control program. The
 2491 line number MAY represent either an absolute position starting with the first line of the
 2492 program or an incremental position relative to the occurrence of the last LINE_LABEL.
 2493 LINE_NUMBER does not change subject to any looping or branching in a control program.

2494 A subType MUST be defined.

Table 200: LineNumberClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LineNumberClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTNumericEventClassType (See section 9.8.1)					

2495 9.8.6 Defintion of PartCountClassType

2496 The current count of parts produced as represented by the Controller. The valid data value
2497 MUST be an integer value.

Table 201: PartCountClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PartCountClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTNumericEventClassType (See section 9.8.1)					

2498 9.8.7 Defintion of RotaryVelocityOverrideClassType

2499 A command issued to adjust the programmed velocity for a Rotary type axis.

2500 This command represents a percentage change to the velocity calculated by a logic or mo-
2501 tion program or set by a switch for a Rotary type axis. ROTARY_VELOCITY_OVERRIDE
2502 is expressed as a percentage of the programmed ROTARY_VELOCITY.

Table 202: RotaryVelocityOverrideClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	RotaryVelocityOverrideClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTNumericEventClassType (See section 9.8.1)					

2503 9.9 String Event Data Item Types

2504 The MTCConnect Standard has the definitions of Events in Section 8.2 of the MTCConnect
2505 Standard Part 2 [MTCConnect Part 2.0] and the definition of the values can be found in
2506 Section 5.5 of MTCConnect Standard Part 3 [MTCConnect Part 3.0].

2507 The description of each type was copied from the MTCConnect Standard, but this not the
 2508 definitive text for each type. For authoritative normative text, please refer to the sources
 2509 [MTCConnect Part 2.0] and [MTCConnect Part 3.0].

2510 9.9.1 Defintion of MTStringEventClassType

2511 The base UA *Type* for all *DataItems* that have a non-specific text representation.

Table 203: MTStringEventClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTStringEventClassType				
IsAbstract	True				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTEventClassType (See Data Items Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LineLabelClassType		See section 9.9.4	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MaterialClassType		See section 9.9.5	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	OperatorIdClassType		See section 9.9.6	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PalletIdClassType		See section 9.9.7	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PartIdClassType		See section 9.9.8	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PartNumberClassType		See section 9.9.9	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ProgramClassType		See section 9.9.10	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ProgramEditNameClassType		See section 9.9.11	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ProgramHeaderClassType		See section 9.9.12	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ProgramCommentClassType		See section 9.9.13	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	SerialNumberClassType		See section 9.9.14	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ToolAssetIdClassType		See section 9.9.15	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ToolNumberClassType		See section 9.9.16	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ToolOffsetClassType		See section 9.9.17	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	UserClassType		See section 9.9.18	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	WireClassType		See section 9.9.19	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	WorkholdingClassType		See section 9.9.20	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	WorkOffsetClassType		See section 9.9.21	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MessageClassType		See section 9.9.22	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AssetChangedClassType		See section 9.9.23	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AssetRemovedClassType		See section 9.9.24	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LineClassType		See section 9.9.25	
Continued...					

References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
HasSubtype	ObjectType	BlockClassType		See section 9.9.2	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	CoupledAxesClassType		See section 9.9.3	

2512 9.9.2 Defintion of BlockClassType

2513 The line of code or command being executed by a Controller *Structural Element*.

2514 The value reported for Block MUST include the entire expression for a line of program
2515 code, including all parameters.

Table 204: BlockClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	BlockClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2516 9.9.2.1 Referenced Properties and Objects

2517 • Supertype::MTStringEventClassType: The line of code or command
2518 being executed by a Controller *Structural Element*.

2519 9.9.3 Defintion of CoupledAxesClassType

2520 Refers to the set of associated axes.

2521 The valid data value for COUPLED_AXES SHOULD be a space-delimited set of axes
2522 reported as the value of the name attribute for each axis. If name is not available, the piece
2523 of equipment MUST report the value of the nativeName attribute for each axis.

Table 205: CoupledAxesClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	CoupledAxesClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2524 9.9.4 Defintion of LineLabelClassType

2525 An optional identifier for a BLOCK of code in a PROGRAM.

Table 206: LineLabelClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LineLabelClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2526 9.9.5 Defintion of MaterialClassType

2527 The identifier of a material used or consumed in the manufacturing process.

Table 207: MaterialClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MaterialClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2528 9.9.6 Defintion of OperatorIdClassType

2529 The identifier of the person currently responsible for operating the piece of equipment.

2530 DEPRECATION WARNING: May be deprecated in the future. See USER below.

Table 208: OperatorIdClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	OperatorIdClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2531 9.9.7 Defintion of PalletIdClassType

2532 The identifier for a pallet.

Table 209: PalletIdClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PalletIdClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2533 9.9.8 Defintion of PartIdClassType

2534 An identifier of a part in a manufacturing operation.

Table 210: PartIdClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PartIdClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2535 9.9.9 Defintion of PartNumberClassType

2536 An identifier of a part or product moving through the manufacturing process.

Table 211: PartNumberClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PartNumberClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2537 9.9.10 Defintion of ProgramClassType

2538 The name of the logic or motion program being executed by the Controller or Path
2539 component.

Table 212: ProgramClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ProgramClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2540 9.9.11 Definition of ProgramEditNameClassType

2541 The name of the program being edited. This is used in conjunction with PROGRAM_EDIT
 2542 when in ACTIVE state.

Table 213: ProgramEditNameClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ProgramEditNameClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2543 9.9.12 Definition of ProgramHeaderClassType

2544 The non-executable header section of the control program.

Table 214: ProgramHeaderClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ProgramHeaderClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2545 9.9.13 Definition of ProgramCommentClassType

2546 A comment or non-executable statement in the control program.

Table 215: ProgramCommentClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ProgramCommentClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2547 9.9.14 Defintion of SerialNumberClassType

2548 The serial number associated with a Component, Asset, or Device.

Table 216: SerialNumberClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	SerialNumberClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2549 9.9.15 Defintion of ToolAssetIdClassType

2550 The identifier of an individual tool asset

Table 217: ToolAssetIdClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ToolAssetIdClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2551 9.9.16 Defintion of ToolNumberClassType

2552 The identifier of a tool provided by the piece of equipment controller.

Table 218: ToolNumberClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ToolNumberClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2553 9.9.17 Defintion of ToolOffsetClassType

2554 A reference to the tool offset variables applied to the active cutting tool associated with a
 2555 Path in a Controller type component.

2556 The valid data value **MUST** be a text string.

2557 The reported value returned for `TOOL_OFFSET` identifies the location in a table or list
 2558 where the actual tool offset values are stored.

2559 A subType **MUST** always be specified.

Table 219: ToolOffsetClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ToolOffsetClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2560 9.9.18 Defintion of UserClassType

2561 The identifier of the person currently responsible for operating the piece of equipment.

2562 A subType **MUST** always be specified.

Table 220: UserClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	UserClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2563 9.9.19 Defintion of WireClassType

2564 The identifier for the type of wire used as the cutting mechanism in Electrical Discharge
 2565 Machining or similar processes.

Table 221: WireClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	WireClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2566 9.9.20 Defintion of WorkholdingClassType

2567 The identifier for the workholding currently in use.

Table 222: WorkholdingClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	WorkholdingClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2568 9.9.21 Defintion of WorkOffsetClassType

2569 A reference to the offset variables for a work piece or part associated with a Path in a
 2570 Controller type component.

2571 The valid data value MUST be a text string.

2572 The reported value returned for WORK_OFFSET identifies the location in a table or list
 2573 where the actual tool offset values are stored.

Table 223: WorkOffsetClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	WorkOffsetClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2574 **9.9.22 Definition of MessageClassType****Table 224:** MessageClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MessageClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2575 **9.9.23 Definition of AssetChangedClassType****Table 225:** AssetChangedClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AssetChangedClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2576 **9.9.24 Definition of AssetRemovedClassType****Table 226:** AssetRemovedClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AssetRemovedClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2577 **9.9.25 Definition of LineClassType**

Table 227: LineClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LineClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTStringEventClassType (See section 9.9.1)					

2578 9.10 Condition Data Item Types

2579 9.10.1 Defintion of ActuatorClassType

Table 228: ActuatorClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ActuatorClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTConditionClassType (See Data Items Documentation)					

2580 9.10.2 Defintion of CommunicationsClassType

Table 229: CommunicationsClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	CommunicationsClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTConditionClassType (See Data Items Documentation)					

2581 9.10.3 Defintion of DataRangeClassType

Table 230: DataRangeClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	DataRangeClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTConditionClassType (See Data Items Documentation)					

2582 9.10.4 Defintion of HardwareClassType

Table 231: HardwareClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	HardwareClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTConditionClassType (See Data Items Documentation)					

2583 9.10.5 Defintion of LogicProgramClassType

Table 232: LogicProgramClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LogicProgramClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTConditionClassType (See Data Items Documentation)					

2584 9.10.6 Defintion of MotionProgramClassType

Table 233: MotionProgramClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MotionProgramClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTConditionClassType (See Data Items Documentation)					

2585 9.10.7 Defintion of SystemClassType

Table 234: SystemClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	SystemClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTConditionClassType (See Data Items Documentation)					

2586 9.11 Data Item Sub Types

2587 The subTypes are related to the various *Variables* using the **HasMTSubClassType**.
 2588 These provide the the second level type classification of the MTConnect *DataItems* and
 2589 also the **ConditionSubClassId** for the *Conditions*.

2590 9.11.1 Defintion of MTDataItemSubClassType

Table 235: MTDaItemSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MTDaItemSubClassType				
IsAbstract	True				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of BaseConditionClassType (See [UA Part 09] Documentation)					
HasSubtype	ObjectType	RelativeSubClassType		See section 9.11.50	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	RemainingSubClassType		See section 9.11.51	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	RequestSubClassType		See section 9.11.52	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ResponseSubClassType		See section 9.11.53	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	RockwellSubClassType		See section 9.11.54	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	RotarySubClassType		See section 9.11.55	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	SetUpSubClassType		See section 9.11.56	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ShoreSubClassType		See section 9.11.57	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	StandardSubClassType		See section 9.11.58	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	SwitchedSubClassType		See section 9.11.59	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	TargetSubClassType		See section 9.11.60	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ToolChangeStopSubClassType		See section 9.11.61	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ToolEdgeSubClassType		See section 9.11.62	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ToolGroupSubClassType		See section 9.11.63	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ToolSubClassType		See section 9.11.64	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	UasbleSubClassType		See section 9.11.65	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	VerticalSubClassType		See section 9.11.66	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	VolumeSubClassType		See section 9.11.67	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	VickersSubClassType		See section 9.11.68	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	WeightSubClassType		See section 9.11.69	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	WorkingSubClassType		See section 9.11.70	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	WorkpieceSubClassType		See section 9.11.71	
Continued...					

References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LineSubClassType		See section 9.11.28	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LoadedSubClassType		See section 9.11.29	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MachineAxisLockSubClassType		See section 9.11.30	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MaintenanceSubClassType		See section 9.11.31	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ManualUnclampSubClassType		See section 9.11.32	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MaximumSubClassType		See section 9.11.33	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MinimumSubClassType		See section 9.11.34	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MohsSubClassType		See section 9.11.35	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MoleSubClassType		See section 9.11.36	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	MotionSubClassType		See section 9.11.37	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	NoScaleSubClassType		See section 9.11.38	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	OperatingSubClassType		See section 9.11.39	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	OperatorSubClassType		See section 9.11.40	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	OptionalStopSubClassType		See section 9.11.41	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	OverrideSubClassType		See section 9.11.42	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PrimarySubClassType		See section 9.11.43	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	PoweredSubClassType		See section 9.11.44	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ProbeSubClassType		See section 9.11.45	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ProcessSubClassType		See section 9.11.46	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ProgrammedSubClassType		See section 9.11.47	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	RadialSubClassType		See section 9.11.48	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	RapidSubClassType		See section 9.11.49	
Continued...					

References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AlternatingSubClassType		See section 9.11.6	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AScaleSubClassType		See section 9.11.7	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AuxiliarySubClassType		See section 9.11.8	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	BadSubClassType		See section 9.11.9	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	BrinellSubClassType		See section 9.11.10	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	BScaleSubClassType		See section 9.11.11	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	CommandedSubClassType		See section 9.11.12	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	GoodSubClassType		See section 9.11.13	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ControlSubClassType		See section 9.11.14	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	CScaleSubClassType		See section 9.11.15	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	DelaySubClassType		See section 9.11.16	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	DirectSubClassType		See section 9.11.17	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	DryRunSubClassType		See section 9.11.18	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	DScaleSubClassType		See section 9.11.19	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	FixtureSubClassType		See section 9.11.20	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	IncrementalSubClassType		See section 9.11.21	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	JobSubClassType		See section 9.11.22	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	KineticSubClassType		See section 9.11.23	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LateralSubClassType		See section 9.11.24	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LeebSubClassType		See section 9.11.25	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LengthSubClassType		See section 9.11.26	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	LinearSubClassType		See section 9.11.27	
Continued...					

References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AbsoluteSubClassType		See section 9.11.2	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ActualSubClassType		See section 9.11.3	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	ActionSubClassType		See section 9.11.4	
HasSubtype	ObjectType	AllSubClassType		See section 9.11.5	

2591 9.11.2 Defintion of AbsoluteSubClassType

2592 The magnitude or measurement of a type irrespective of its relation to other values.

Table 236: AbsoluteSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AbsoluteSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2593 9.11.3 Defintion of ActualSubClassType

2594 The measured value of the a type.

Table 237: ActualSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ActualSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2595 9.11.4 Defintion of ActionSubClassType

2596 An indication of the operating state or value of a type.

Table 238: ActionSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ActionSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2597 9.11.5 Defintion of AllSubClassType

Table 239: AllSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AllSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2598 9.11.6 Defintion of AlternatingSubClassType

2599 The measurement of a type occurring in turn repeatedly.

Table 240: AlternatingSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AlternatingSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2600 9.11.7 Defintion of AScaleSubClassType

2601 A Scale weighting factor for the measurement of sound level.

Table 241: AScaleSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AScaleSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2602 9.11.8 Defintion of AuxiliarySubClassType

2603 Example: When multiple locations on a piece of bar stock are referenced as the indication
 2604 for the END_OF_BAR, the additional location(s) MUST be designated as AUXILIARY
 2605 indication(s) for the END_OF_BAR.

Table 242: AuxiliarySubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	AuxiliarySubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2606 9.11.9 Defintion of BadSubClassType

2607 Indicates the count of incorrect parts produced.

Table 243: BadSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	BadSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2608 9.11.10 Defintion of BrinellSubClassType

2609 A scale to measure the resistance to deformation of a surface.

Table 244: BrinellSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	BrinellSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2610 9.11.11 Defintion of BScaleSubClassType

2611 B Scale weighting factor for the measurement of sound level.

Table 245: BScaleSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	BScaleSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDatItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2612 9.11.12 Defintion of CommandedSubClassType

2613 The value as specified by the Controller type component.

Table 246: CommandedSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	CommandedSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDatItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2614 9.11.13 Defintion of GoodSubClassType

2615 Indicates the count of correct parts made.

Table 247: GoodSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	GoodSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDatItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2616 9.11.14 Defintion of ControlSubClassType

2617 The state of the enabling signal or control logic that enables or disables the function or
 2618 operation of the *Structural Element*.

Table 248: ControlSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ControlSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2619 9.11.15 Defintion of CScaleSubClassType

2620 C Scale weighting factor for the measurement of sound level.

Table 249: CScaleSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	CScaleSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2621 9.11.16 Defintion of DelaySubClassType

2622 Measurement of the time that a piece of equipment is waiting for an event or an action to
2623 occur.

Table 250: DelaySubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	DelaySubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2624 9.11.17 Defintion of DirectSubClassType

2625 Measurement of DC current or voltage.

Table 251: DirectSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	DirectSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2626 9.11.18 Defintion of DryRunSubClassType

2627 A setting or operator selection used to execute a test mode to confirm the execution of
 2628 machine functions.

Table 252: DryRunSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	DryRunSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2629 9.11.19 Defintion of DScaleSubClassType

2630 D Scale weighting factor for the measurement of sound level.

Table 253: DScaleSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	DScaleSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2631 9.11.20 Defintion of FixtureSubClassType

2632 Fixture denotes a specific type of a piece of equipment.

Table 254: FixtureSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	FixtureSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2633 9.11.21 Defintion of IncrementalSubClassType

2634 A small change which could be either positive or negative in a Type's value or function.

2635 Example: The position of a block of program code relative to the occurrence of the last

2636 LINE_LABEL encountered in the control program.

Table 255: IncrementalSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	IncrementalSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2637 9.11.22 Defintion of JobSubClassType

2638 The value of a signal or calculation issued to adjust the feedrate of the axes associated with
 2639 a Path component when the axes, or a single axis, are being operated in a manual mode or
 2640 method (jogging).

Table 256: JobSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	JobSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2641 9.11.23 Defintion of KineticSubClassType

Table 257: KineticSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	KineticSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2642 9.11.24 Defintion of LateralSubClassType

2643 An indication of the position of a mechanism that may move in a lateral direction. The
 2644 mechanism is represented by a Composition type component.

Table 258: LateralSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LateralSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2645 9.11.25 Defintion of LeebSubClassType

2646 A scale to measure the elasticity of a surface.

Table 259: LeebSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LeebSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2647 9.11.26 Defintion of LengthSubClassType

2648 The measurement or extent of something from end to end.

Table 260: LengthSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LengthSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2649 9.11.27 Defintion of LinearSubClassType

2650 The direction of motion.

Table 261: LinearSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LinearSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2651 9.11.28 Defintion of LineSubClassType

2652 The state of the power source for the *Structural Element*.

Table 262: LineSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LineSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2653 9.11.29 Defintion of LoadedSubClassType

2654 An indication that the sub-parts of a piece of equipment are under load.

Table 263: LoadedSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	LoadedSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2655 9.11.30 Defintion of MachineAxisLockSubClassType

2656 A setting or operator selection that changes the behavior of the controller on a piece of
2657 equipment.

Table 264: MachineAxisLockSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MachineAxisLockSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2658 9.11.31 Defintion of MaintenanceSubClassType

2659 The identifier of the person currently responsible for performing maintenance on the piece
2660 of equipment.

Table 265: MaintenanceSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MaintenanceSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2661 9.11.32 Defintion of ManualUnclampSubClassType

2662 An indication of the state of an operator controlled interlock that can inhibit the ability to
2663 initiate an unclamp action of an electronically controlled chuck.

Table 266: ManualUnclampSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ManualUnclampSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2664 9.11.33 Defintion of MaximumSubClassType

2665 Maximum or peak value recorded for the data item during the calculation period.

Table 267: MaximumSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MaximumSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2666 9.11.34 Defintion of MinimumSubClassType

2667 Minimum value recorded for the data item during the calculation period.

Table 268: MinimumSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MinimumSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2668 9.11.35 Defintion of MohsSubClassType

2669 A scale to measure the resistance to scratching of a surface.

Table 269: MohsSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MohsSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDatItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2670 9.11.36 Defintion of MoleSubClassType

Table 270: MoleSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MoleSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDatItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2671 9.11.37 Defintion of MotionSubClassType

2672 An indication of the open or closed state of a mechanism. The mechanism is represented
 2673 by a Composition type component.

Table 271: MotionSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	MotionSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDatItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2674 9.11.38 Defintion of NoScaleSubClassType

2675 No weighting factor on the frequency scale for the measurement of sound level.

Table 272: NoScaleSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	NoScaleSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2676 9.11.39 Defintion of OperatingSubClassType

2677 An indication that the major sub-parts of a piece of equipment are powered or performing
 2678 any activity whether producing a part or product or not.

2679 Example: For traditional machine tools, this includes when the piece of equipment is
 2680 WORKING or it is idle.

Table 273: OperatingSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	OperatingSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2681 9.11.40 Defintion of OperatorSubClassType

2682 The identifier of the person currently responsible for operating the piece of equipment.

Table 274: OperatorSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	OperatorSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2683 9.11.41 Defintion of OptionalStopSubClassType

2684 A setting or operator selection that changes the behavior of the controller on a piece of
 2685 equipment.

Table 275: OptionalStopSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	OptionalStopSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2686 9.11.42 Defintion of OverrideSubClassType

2687 The operator's overridden value.

Table 276: OverrideSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	OverrideSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2688 9.11.43 Defintion of PrimarySubClassType

2689 Specific applications MAY reference one or more locations on a piece of bar stock as the
 2690 indication for the END_OF_BAR. The main or most important location MUST be desig-
 2691 nated as the PRIMARY indication for the END_OF_BAR.

Table 277: PrimarySubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PrimarySubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2692 9.11.44 Defintion of PoweredSubClassType

2693 An indication that primary power is applied to the piece of equipment and, as a minimum,
 2694 the controller or logic portion of the piece of equipment is powered and functioning or
 2695 components that are required to remain on are powered.

Table 278: PoweredSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	PoweredSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDatItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2696 9.11.45 Defintion of ProbeSubClassType

2697 The position provided by a measurement probe.

Table 279: ProbeSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ProbeSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDatItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2698 9.11.46 Defintion of ProcessSubClassType

2699 The measurement of the time from the beginning of production of a part or product on a
 2700 piece of equipment until the time that production is complete for that part or product on
 2701 that piece of equipment. This includes the time that the piece of equipment is running,
 2702 producing parts or products, or in the process of producing parts.

Table 280: ProcessSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ProcessSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDatItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2703 9.11.47 Defintion of ProgrammedSubClassType

2704 The value of a signal or calculation issued to adjust the feedrate of the axes associated with
 2705 a Path component when the axes, or a single axis, are operating as specified by a logic or
 2706 motion program or set by a switch.

Table 281: ProgrammedSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ProgrammedSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDatItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2707 9.11.48 Defintion of RadialSubClassType

2708 A reference to a radial type tool offset variable.

Table 282: RadialSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	RadialSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDatItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2709 9.11.49 Defintion of RapidSubClassType

2710 The value of a signal or calculation issued to adjust the feedrate of the axes associated
 2711 with a Path component when the axes, or a single axis, are being operated in a rapid
 2712 positioning mode or method (rapid).

Table 283: RapidSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	RapidSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDatItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2713 9.11.50 Defintion of RelativeSubClassType

Table 284: RelativeSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	RelativeSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2714 9.11.51 Defintion of RemainingSubClassType

2715 The remaining amount of the type specified.

Table 285: RemainingSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	RemainingSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2716 9.11.52 Defintion of RequestSubClassType

2717 Request subtype identifies if the data item defined for MTConnect Interaction Model

2718 [MTConnect Part 5.0] represents a request.

Table 286: RequestSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	RequestSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2719 9.11.53 Defintion of ResponseSubClassType

2720 Response subtype identifies if the data item defined for MTConnect Interaction Model

2721 [MTConnect Part 5.0] represents a response.

Table 287: ResponseSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ResponseSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2722 9.11.54 Defintion of RockwellSubClassType

2723 A scale to measure the resistance to deformation of a surface.

Table 288: RockwellSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	RockwellSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2724 9.11.55 Defintion of RotarySubClassType

2725 The rotational direction of a rotary motion using the right hand rule convention.

Table 289: RotarySubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	RotarySubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2726 9.11.56 Defintion of SetUpSubClassType

2727 The identifier of the person currently responsible for operating the piece of equipment.

Table 290: SetupSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	SetupSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2728 9.11.57 Defintion of ShoreSubClassType

2729 A scale to measure the resistance to deformation of a surface.

Table 291: ShoreSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ShoreSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2730 9.11.58 Defintion of StandardSubClassType

2731 The standard or original value of an object.

Table 292: StandardSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	StandardSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2732 9.11.59 Defintion of SwitchedSubClassType

2733 An indication of the activation state of a mechanism represented by a Composition
2734 type component.

2735 The activation state indicates whether the Composition element is activated or not.

Table 293: SwitchedSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	SwitchedSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDatItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2736 9.11.60 Defintion of TargetSubClassType

2737 Indicates the number of parts that are projected or planned to be produced.

Table 294: TargetSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	TargetSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDatItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2738 9.11.61 Defintion of ToolChangeStopSubClassType

2739 A setting or operator selection that changes the behavior of the controller on a piece of
2740 equipment.

Table 295: ToolChangeStopSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ToolChangeStopSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDatItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2741 9.11.62 Defintion of ToolEdgeSubClassType

Table 296: ToolEdgeSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ToolEdgeSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2742 9.11.63 Defintion of ToolGroupSubClassType

2743 The tool group a specific tool is assigned to in the part program.

Table 297: ToolGroupSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ToolGroupSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2744 9.11.64 Defintion of ToolSubClassType

Table 298: ToolSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	ToolSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2745 9.11.65 Defintion of UasbleSubClassType

2746 The remaining useable value of an object.

Table 299: UasbleSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	UasbleSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2747 9.11.66 Defintion of VerticalSubClassType

2748 An indication of the position of a mechanism that may move in a vertical direction.

Table 300: VerticalSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	VerticalSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2749 9.11.67 Defintion of VolumeSubClassType

2750 A measurement of space accupied by a physical object.

Table 301: VolumeSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	VolumeSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2751 9.11.68 Defintion of VickersSubClassType

2752 A scale to measure the resistance to deformation of a surface.

Table 302: VickersSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	VickersSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2753 9.11.69 Defintion of WeightSubClassType

2754 A physical object's relative mass.

Table 303: WeightSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	WeightSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2755 9.11.70 Defintion of WorkingSubClassType

2756 An indication that a piece of equipment is performing any activity.

Table 304: WorkingSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	WorkingSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2757 9.11.71 Defintion of WorkpieceSubClassType

2758 A physical object being or to be worked on with a tool or machine.

Table 305: WorkpieceSubClassType Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	WorkpieceSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of MTDDataItemSubClassType (See section 9.11.1)					

2759 **9.12 MTConnect Device Profile**

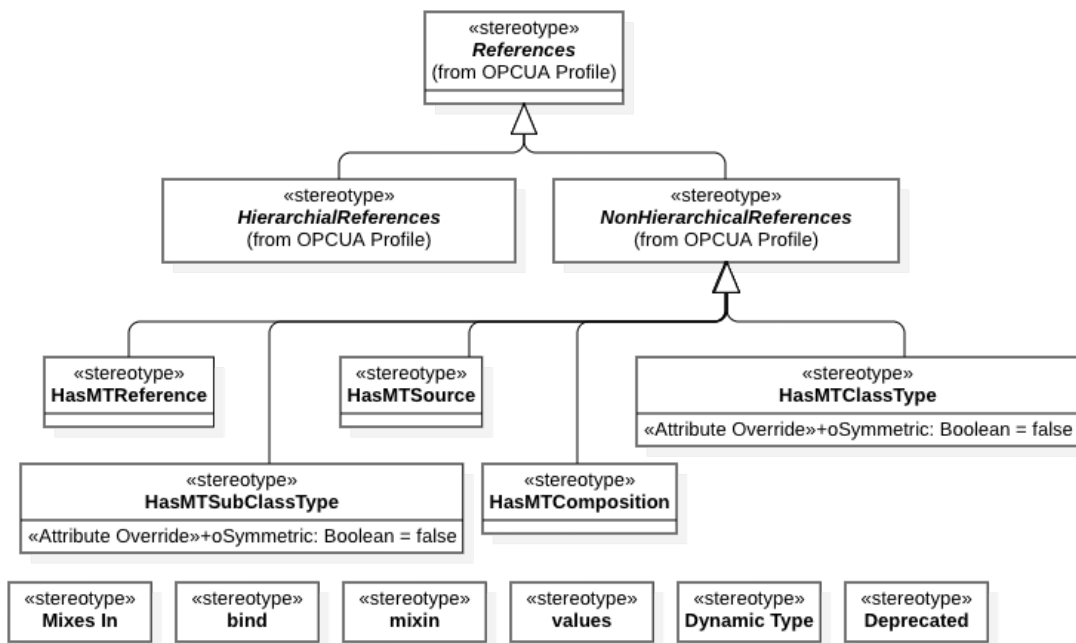


Figure 36: MTConnect Device Profile Diagram

2760 The device profile documents the common data types and stereotypes that are used to
 2761 construct the model. A stereotype is a design or modeling pattern that provides additional
 2762 information about the type or the relationship between types.

2763 It can also identify the behavior of a property or the role the type or relation will play in
 2764 the model.

2765 Stereotypes are used throughout the model to provide additional information that will help
 2766 provide context and definition to aid in better understanding the data model.

2767 **9.12.1 Defintion of «Deprecated»**

2768 An MTConnect deprecated entity that is kept for backward compatibility.

2769 9.12.2 Defintion of «Dynamic Type»

2770 A dynamic type indicates that the class browse name and type will be determined at con-
2771 figuration time based on the MTCConnect *Device* elements.

2772 9.12.3 Defintion of «HasMTClassType»

2773 A *DataItem* is representated in OPC UA as a sub-type of the most appropriate **Base-**
2774 **DataVariableType**. The type is derived from the MTCConnect `type` attribute and
2775 references the corect `..ClassType`.

Table 306: «HasMTClassType» Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	HasMTClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
Symmetric	false				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of NonHierarchicalReferences (See [UA Part 05] Documentation)					

2776 9.12.4 Defintion of «HasMTComposition»

2777 A reference from the MTCConnect Data Item or condition to the Composition Object of the
2778 Component.

Table 307: «HasMTComposition» Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	HasMTComposition				
IsAbstract	False				
Symmetric	true				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	DataType	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of NonHierarchicalReferences (See [UA Part 05] Documentation)					

2779 9.12.5 Defintion of «HasMTReference»

2780 A reference from one component to either a *DataItem* or a *Component*.

Table 308: «HasMTReference» Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	HasMTReference				
IsAbstract	False				
Symmetric	true				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of NonHierarchicalReferences (See [UA Part 05] Documentation)					

2781 9.12.6 Defintion of «HasMTSource»

2782 The Source relation to a *Component* or *DataItem*.

Table 309: «HasMTSource» Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	HasMTSource				
IsAbstract	False				
Symmetric	true				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of NonHierarchicalReferences (See [UA Part 05] Documentation)					

2783 9.12.7 Defintion of «HasMTSubClassType»

2784 A *DataItem* is represented in OPC UA as a sub-type of the most appropriate **Base-**
 2785 **DataVariableType**. The sub-type is derived from the MTConnect subType attribute
 2786 and references the corect `..ClassType`.

Table 310: «HasMTSubClassType» Definition

Attribute	Value				
BrowseName	HasMTSubClassType				
IsAbstract	False				
Symmetric	false				
References	NodeClass	BrowseName	Data Type	TypeDefinition	ModelingRule
Subtype of NonHierarchicalReferences (See [UA Part 05] Documentation)					

2787 9.12.8 Defintion of «Mixes In»

2788 This stereotype is associated with the dependency between a type and a mixin. See Section
 2789 9.12.10 for a complete description of the mixin.

2790 9.12.9 Defintion of «bind»

2791 When a dynamic type (See Section 9.12.2) creates an instance where the super-type can
2792 be associated based on the data item category and type, the `Type Factory` will specify
2793 which supertype is to be referenced.

2794 The `bind` stereotype indicates the relationship between the dynamic sub-type and the
2795 parent type are resolved based on the `MTCConnect DataItem` meta data.

2796 9.12.10 Defintion of «mixin»

2797 The mixin pattern injects the properties and operations into the types that are related to
2798 the using the `Mixes In` dependency. Mixins allow for lightweight multiple inheritance.
2799 Since OPC/UA does not allow for multiple inheritance and the `MTCConnect` types require
2800 the same set of properties when they are sub-typed from existing OPC/UA types, this
2801 mechanism allows for this relationship to be expressed.

2802 9.12.11 Defintion of «use»

2803 The `use` stereotype indicates that one class uses another as a helper to perform a specific
2804 operation or activity. This stereotype is mainly used to indicate that a specific factory is
2805 being employed by another type to create dynamic properties or relationships.

2806 9.12.12 Defintion of «values»

2807 For controlled vocabularies of enumerated types, specifies the relationship to the allowable
2808 values for the type.

2809 10 Profiles and Namespaces

2810 10.1 Namespace Metadata

2811 Table 311 defines the *namespace metadata* for this specification. The *Object* is used to
 2812 provide information for the *namespace* and an indication about static *Nodes*. Static *Nodes*
 2813 are identical for all *Attributes* in all *Servers*, including the *Value Attribute*. See [UA Part
 2814 05] for more details.

2815 The information is provided as *Object* of type **NamespaceMetadataType**. This *Ob-*
 2816 *ject* is a component of the *Namespaces Object* that is part of the *Server Object*. The
 2817 **NamespaceMetadataType ObjectType** and its *Properties* are defined in [UA Part
 2818 05].

2819 The version information is also provided as part of the **ModelTableEntry** in the *UAN-*
 2820 *odeSet* XML file. The *UANodeSet* XML schema is defined in [UA Part 06].

Table 311: NamespaceMetadata Object for this Specification

Attribute	Value		
BrowseName	http://opcfoundation.org/UA/MTConnect/v2/		
References	BrowseName	Data Type	Value
HasProperty	NamespaceUri	String	http://opcfoundation.org/UA/MTConnect/v2/
HasProperty	NamespaceVersion	String	2.0
HasProperty	NamespacePublicationDate	DateTime	2018-10-31T00:00:00
HasProperty	IsNamespaceSubset	Boolean	False
HasProperty	StaticNodeIdTypes	IdType[]	[0]
HasProperty	StaticNumericNodeIdRange	NumericRange[]	[1:1073741824]
HasProperty	StaticStringNodeIdPattern	String	

2821 10.2 Conformance Units and Profiles

2822 This chapter defines the corresponding *Profiles* and *Conformance Units* for the OPC UA
 2823 Information Model for MTConnect. *Profiles* are named groupings of *Conformance Units*.
 2824 *Facets* are *Profiles* that will be combined with other *Profiles* to define the complete func-
 2825 tionality of an OPC UA *Server* or *Client*.

2826 10.2.1 Server

2827 Table 312 defines the *Server* based *ConformanceUnits*.

Table 312: MTConnect *Server* Information Model

Conformance Unit	Description	Optional/Mandatory
MTConnect Base Functionality	The server supports the <i>BaseObjectModel</i> . This includes exposing all mandatory objects, variables, methods, and data types.	M
Availability	The Server must support the <i>Availability DataItem</i> to indicate if data is available from the device.	M
Device	The Server has at least one root <i>MTDeviceType</i>	M
AssetChanged Data Item	The Server must support the MTConnect <i>AssetChanged</i> and <i>AssetRemoved</i> data items	O
Message	The Server must support the MTConnect <i>Message</i> data item and publish <i>MTMessageEventType Events</i>	M
Condition	The server must support the MTConnect <i>MTConditionType</i> type and provide correct activation states	M
Condition Branches	The server must support MTConnect <i>MTConditionType</i> condition branches to represent multiple MTConnect <i>Condition</i> parallel activations	O
Three Space Sample	The server must support the <i>MTThreeSpaceSampleType</i> data type to provide a spacial coordinate	M
MTHasClassType and MTHasSub-ClassType	The server must have <i>MTSampleType</i> , <i>MTStringEventType</i> , <i>MTMessageType</i> , <i>MTNumericEventType</i> , and <i>MTControlledVariableType</i> with relationships to the MTConnect <i>Class</i> types associated with the MTConnect <i>DataItem</i> type and <i>subType</i>	M
MTConnect meta data	<i>DataItems</i> represented in OPC UA must have the full meta data required by the MTConnect standard for all attributes	M
Engineer Units	All <i>MTSampleType</i> data items must have the EngineeringUnits follow the prescribed Units as specified in the MTConnect standard.	M

2828 10.2.2 Client

2829 Table 313 defines the *Client* based *ConformanceUnits*.

Table 313: MTConnect *Client* Information Model

Conformance Unit	Description	Optional/Mandatory
MTConnect Base Functionality	The client supports the <i>BaseObjectModel</i> . This includes exposing all mandatory objects, variables, methods, and data types.	M
Availability	The client must interpret the <i>Availability DataItem</i> to indicate if data is available from the device.	M

2830 10.3 Handling of OPC UA Namespaces

2831 *Namespaces* are used by OPC UA to create unique identifiers across different naming
 2832 authorities. The Attributes **NodeId** and **BrowseName** are identifiers. A *Node* in the
 2833 UA *AddressSpace* is unambiguously identified using a *NodeId*. Unlike **NodeIds**, the
 2834 **BrowseName** cannot be used to unambiguously identify a *Node*. Different *Nodes* may

2835 have the same **BrowseName**. They are used to build a browse path between two Nodes
2836 or to define a standard *Property*.

2837 *Servers* may often choose to use the same namespace for the **NodeId** and the **Browse-**
2838 **Name**. However, if they want to provide a standard *Property*, its `glsBrowseName` shall
2839 have the *namespace* of the standards body although the *namespace* of the **NodeId** re-
2840 flects something else, for example the **EngineeringUnits Property**. All **NodeIds**
2841 of *Nodes* not defined in this specification shall not use the standard *namespaces*.

2842 Table 314 provides a list of mandatory and optional namespaces used in an MTConnect
2843 OPC UA *Server*.

Table 314: Namespaces used in a MTConnect Server

NamespaceURI	Description	Use
http://opcfoundation.org/UA/	<i>Namespace</i> for NodeIds and BrowseNames defined in the OPC UA specification. This <i>namespace</i> shall have <i>namespace</i> index 0.	Mandatory
Local Server URI	<i>Namespace</i> for nodes defined in the local server. This may include types and instances used in an <i>AutoID</i> Device represented by the <i>Server</i> . This <i>namespace</i> shall have <i>namespace</i> index 1.	Mandatory
http://opcfoundation.org/UA/MTConnect/v2/	<i>Namespace</i> for NodeIds and BrowseNames defined in this specification. The <i>namespace</i> index is <i>Server</i> specific.	Mandatory
Vendor specific types	A <i>Server</i> may provide vendor-specific types like types derived from <i>ObjectTypes</i> defined in this specification in a vendor-specific <i>namespace</i> .	Optional
Vendor specific instances	A <i>Server</i> provides vendor-specific instances of the standard types or vendor-specific instances of vendor-specific types in a vendor-specific <i>namespace</i> . It is recommended to separate vendor specific types and vendor specific instances into two or more <i>namespaces</i> .	Mandatory

2844 Table 315 provides a list of *namespaces* and their index used for **BrowseNames** in this
2845 specification. The default *namespace* of this specification is not listed since all **Browse-**
2846 **Names** without prefix use this default *namespace*.

Table 315: Namespaces used used in this specification

NamespaceURI	Namespace Index	Example
http://opcfoundation.org/UA/	0	0:EngineeringUnits
http://opcfoundation.org/UA/MTConnect/v2/	1	1:MTDevice

2847 **Annex A MTConnect Namespace and Mappings** 2848 **(normative)**

2849 **A.1 Namespace and identifiers for MTConnect Information** 2850 **Model**

2851 This appendix defines the numeric identifiers for all of the numeric NodeIds defined in this
2852 specification. The identifiers are specified in a CSV file with the following syntax:

2853 <SymbolName>, <Identifier>, <NodeClass>

2854 Where the *SymbolName* is either the **BrowseName** of a Type *Node* or the *BrowsePath*
2855 for an *Instance Node* that appears in the specification and the Identifier is the numeric
2856 value for the **NodeId**.

2857 The *BrowsePath* for an Instance *Node* is constructed by appending the **BrowseName** of
2858 the instance *Node* to the **BrowseName** for the containing instance or type. An underscore
2859 character is used to separate each **BrowseName** in the path. Let's take for example,
2860 the MTComponentType **ObjectType** Node which has the NativeName *Property*.
2861 The **Name** for the NativeName *InstanceDeclaration* within the MTComponentType
2862 declaration is as follows: MTComponentType_NativeName.

2863 The CSV associated with this version of the standard can be found here:

2864 [http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/schemas/MTConnect/v2/2.00/MTConnect.](http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/schemas/MTConnect/v2/2.00/MTConnect.NodeIds.csv)
2865 [NodeIds.csv](http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/schemas/MTConnect/v2/2.00/MTConnect.NodeIds.csv)

2866 NOTE The latest CSV that is compatible with this version of the standard can be found
2867 here:

2868 [http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/schemas/MTConnect/v2/MTConnect.](http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/schemas/MTConnect/v2/MTConnect.NodeIds.csv)
2869 [NodeIds.csv](http://www.opcfoundation.org/UA/schemas/MTConnect/v2/MTConnect.NodeIds.csv)

2870 A computer processible version of the complete *Information Model* defined in this spec-
2871 ification is also provided. It follows the XML *Information Model* schema syntax defined
2872 in OPC [UA Part 06].

2873 The information schema for this version of the standard, including all errata, can be found
2874 at the following URL:

2875 [http://opcfoundation.org/UA/schemas/MTConnect/v2/2.00/Opc.Ua.MTConnect.](http://opcfoundation.org/UA/schemas/MTConnect/v2/2.00/Opc.Ua.MTConnect.NodeSet2.xml)
2876 [NodeSet2.xml](http://opcfoundation.org/UA/schemas/MTConnect/v2/2.00/Opc.Ua.MTConnect.NodeSet2.xml)

2877 NOTE: The latest information schema for this version of the standard, including all errata,
2878 can be found at the following URL:

2879 [http://opcfoundation.org/UA/schemas/MTCConnect/v2/Opc.Ua.MTCConnect.](http://opcfoundation.org/UA/schemas/MTCConnect/v2/Opc.Ua.MTCConnect.NodeSet2.xml)
2880 [NodeSet2.xml](http://opcfoundation.org/UA/schemas/MTCConnect/v2/Opc.Ua.MTCConnect.NodeSet2.xml)